## Operator Manual

MTX 1345 Dot Matrix Printer


Acknowledgements

## EPSON is a Trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation

IBM is a Trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
ProPrinter is a Trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

A Publication of PSi Printer Systems international GmbH
Eiserfelder Straße 316
57080 Siegen • Germany
Pub. No. 5112991 16711, May 1998
Order No. 870824000110
Great care has been taken to ensure that the information in this handbook is accurate and complete. However, should any errors or omissions be discovered or should any user wish to make suggestions for improving this handbook, please feel encouraged to contact us with the relevant details.
The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
Copyright © by PSi Printer Systems international
All rights strictly reserved. Reproduction or issue to third parties in any form is not permitted without written authorization from the publisher.

## IMPORTANT INFORMATION: REGULATIONS

## Federal Communications Commission Compliance Notice (for USA only)

 We certify that the equipment at issue,
## Type: Printer MTX 1345

corresponds to the law regulations ruling electromagnetic compatibility of appliances (89/336/EWG) and, therefore, fulfils the requirements for conformity marking with the CE-sign.
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.


## NM Caution

- This printer has been certified to comply with FCC standards, which are applied to the USA only. A shielded interface cable should be used according to FCC 15.27(C). In addition, a grounded plug should be plugged into a grounded AC outlet after checking the rating of the local power supply for the printer to operate properly and safely.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.


## Canadian Department of Communications Compliance Statement

 (for Canada only)This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus as set out in the interference- causing equipment standard entitled "Digital Apparatus", ICES-003 of the Department of Communications.

Avis de conformité aux normes du ministère des Communications du Canada (Canada Seul)

Cet appareil numérique respecte les limites de bruits radioélectriques applicables aux appareils numériques de Classe B prescrites dans la norme sur le matériel brouilleur : "Appareils Numériques", NMB-003 édictée par le ministère des Communications.


## Important Safety Instructions

Your MTX 1345 printer has been carefully designed to give you years of safe, reliable performance. As with all electrical equipment, however, there are a few basic precautions you should take to avoid hurting yourself or damaging the unit:

- Read the setup and operating instructions in this manual carefully. Be sure to save it for future reference.
- Read and follow all warning and instruction labels on the printer itself.
- Unplug the printer before you clean it. Use only a damp cloth -- do not use a liquid or aerosol cleaner.
- Place your printer on a firm, solid surface. If you put it on something unsteady, it might fall and be damaged. If you place it on a soft surface, such as a rug, sofa, or bed, the vents may be blocked, causing it to overheat.
- To protect your printer from overheating, make sure no openings on the printer are blocked. Don't put the printer on or near a heat source, such as a radiator or heat register. If you put the printer in any kind of enclosure, make sure it is well ventilated.
- Do not use your printer near water, or spill liquid of any kind into it.
- Be certain that your power source matches the rating listed on the back of the printer. If you're not sure, check with your dealer or with your local power company.
- Your printer has a grounded, 3-prong plug as a safety feature, and it will only fit into a grounded outlet. If you can't plug it in, chances are you have a non-grounded outlet; contact an electrician to have it replaced with a grounded outlet. Do not use an adapter to defeat the grounding.
- To avoid damaging the power cord, don't put anything on it or place it where it will be walked on. If the cord becomes damaged or frayed, replace it immediately.
- If you're using an extension cord or power strip with the printer, make sure that the total of amperes required by all of the equipment on the extension is less than the extension's rating. Generally, the total ratings of all equipment plugged into any one power line should not exceed 15 amperes. Don't exceed this unless you know that the power line your equipment is plugged into has a rating above 15 amperes.
- Aside from the routine maintenance described in this handbook, don't try to service the printer yourself; opening the cover may expose you to shocks or other hazards. Don't make any adjustments other than those outlined in the manual -- you might cause damage requiring extensive repair work.
- If anything happens that indicates your printer is not working properly or has been damaged, unplug it immediately and contact MTX for service. These are some of the things to look for:
- The power cord or plug is frayed or damaged.
- Liquid has been spilled into the housing, or the printer has been exposed to water.
- The printer has been dropped or its cabinet has been damaged.
- The printer doesn't function normally when you're following the operating instructions.


## For Your Safety

To ensure safe operation the three-pin plug supplied must be inserted only into a standard three-pin power point which is effectively grounded through the normal household wiring.

Extension cords used with the equipment must be three-conductor and be correctly wired to provide connection to ground. Incorrectly wired extension cords are a major cause of fatalities.

The fact that the equipment operates satisfactorily does not imply that the power is grounded and that the installation is completely safe. For your safety, if in any doubt about the effective grounding of the power, consult a qualified electrician.

This MTX 1345 printer fulfills the safety regulations according to UL 1950 and VDE (IEC 950) and CSA 22.2/No. 950 for computer systems.

The main power cable must be connected to a ground protected wall-socket The selected voltage of the printer must be in accordance with the local voltage.

The power plug must be easily accessible at any time so that it can be disconnected immediately in case of danger or for maintenance purposes.. Comme le câble de secteur sert de dipositif d'arrêt-urgence, sa connexion à l'imprimante doit être tout le temps accessible.

Before installing the printer, check the surrounding conditions in which the printer will be placed (see next page, Operating Environment and chapter 1).

During a thunderstorm you should never attempt to connect or disconnect any interface cables.

The power supply should only be opened and checked by authorized personnel. Repairs and maintenance beyond the descriptions of chapter 5 should only be attempted by authorized personnel as well. Repairs done inappropriately may cause damage to the device and severe danger for the user.

## Operating Environment

Avoid installing the printer where it is exposed to moisture or heat (eg. direct sun light).

- Temperature:
- Humidity:
- Humidity with Automatic Sheet Feeder (ASF):
$+10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+50^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right.$ to $\left.+95^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
$20 \%$ to $80 \%$
$30 \%$ to $70 \%$
Slots and openings in the printer's housing are provided for ventilation. Always ensure that these openings are not obstructed.

Also ensure that the cables at the rear of the printer do not interfere with the output paper path.

When processing fanfold paper always place the printer with its front edge slightly off the edge of the table.


## Table of Contents

Preface ..... XIII
About this manual ..... XIII
1.Getting started ..... 1-1
1.1 Unpacking ..... 1-1
A First Look at the Printer ..... 1-2
Site Consierations ..... 1-3

- Environment Conditions ..... 1-3
- Power Requiremens ..... 1-3
- Transport Lock ..... 1-4
- Repacking information ..... 1-4
1.2 Installing the Interface Module ..... 1-5
1.3 The Power Supply ..... 1-6
Main Input Voltage Selection ..... 1-6
1.4 Power ON / OFF Switch ..... 1-7
1.5 Installing the Ribbon Cassette ..... 1-8
1.5.1 Changing the Ribbon Cassette ..... 1-12
1.6 Selection of Operator Panel Language ..... 1-13
1.7 Tractor ..... 1-14
Inserting Fanfold Paper for the First Time ..... 1-14
1.8 Manual Sheet Insertion ..... 1-17
1.9 Selection of The Paper Source ..... 1-19
1.10 Test-Prints ..... 1-20
1.11 Connecting to a Computer ..... 1-24
Parallel/Serial Interface ..... 1-24
1.12 Emulation Selection ..... 1-25


## Table of contents

2. Printer Operation ..... 2-1
2.1 Control Panel ..... 2-1
2.2 Function Keys ..... 2-2
2.2.1 Short Description of Keys ..... 2-2

- in the printer operation state READY or BUSY ..... 2-2
- in the printer operation state LOCAL ..... 2-2
2.2.2 Detail Description of Keys ..... 2-3
in the printer operation state READY or BUSY ..... 2-3
Quick Settings ..... 2-3
Top Row Keys ..... 2-4
Lower Row Keys ..... 2-4
2.2.3 Meaning of the Keys in the LOCAL Mode ..... 2-7
Lower Row Keys ..... 2-7
2.3 Menu Mode ..... 2-8
2.3.1 To Activate the Menu ..... 2-9
2.3.2 To confirm Selection ..... 2-10
2.3.3 How to Save Settings ..... 2-11
2.3.4 Quick Settings ..... 2-12
2.4 Status and Error Messages ..... 2-13


## Table of contents

3. Configuring the Printer ..... 3-1
3.1 What means Configuration ..... 3-1
3.2 Standard Configuration ..... 3-3
3.3 Explanation of the Printout ..... 3-4
3.4 Explanation of Individual Menu Items ..... 3-5
Main Functions ..... 3-5
MACRO SELECT ..... 3-5
CHANGE MACRO ..... 3-5
INSTALLATION ..... 3-5
SAVE ..... 3-5
PRINT OUT ..... 3-6
Main Function CHANGE MACRO ..... 3-6
FONT ..... 3-6
PRINT QUALITY ..... 3-7
SUB/SUPER FONT ..... 3-7
PITCH ..... 3-7
LINE ..... 3-7
PAPER LENGTH ..... 3-8
VERT.POS.ADJ (Vertical Position Adjustment) ..... 3-9

- LEFT MARGIN ..... 3-9
RIGHT MARGIN ..... 3-10
- TOP MARGIN ..... 3-10
- BOTTOM MARGIN ..... 3-11
PERFORATION SKIP ..... 3-11
PAPER SOURCE ..... 3-11
- PAPER EXIT ..... 3-12
EMULATION ..... 3-12
CHARACTER SET ..... 3-12
LINE MODE ..... 3-13
\$\$-COMMANDS ..... 3-13
TEAR OFF MODE ..... 3-13
PRE-SEPARATION ..... 3-13
Main Function INSTALLATION ..... 3-14
Sub-Function INTERFACE ..... 3-14
BUFFER ..... 3-14
- WORD LENGTH ..... 3-14
- I/F Type ..... 3-14
BAUD RATE ..... 3-14
PARITY BIT ..... 3-14
PROTOCOL ..... 3-14
AUTO-STATUS ..... 3-15
Sub-Function ADJUSTMENT ..... 3-15
AGC POSITION ..... 3-15
PLATEN GAP ..... 3-16
AGC ADJUST ..... 3-16
PAPIER-IN ADJUST ..... 3-16
CUT V-POS ..... 3-17
UNI-DIRECT. CMD ..... 3-17
TRACT.FORM FEED MODE ..... 3-18
Special Menu Items under INSTALLATION ..... 3-18
LANGUAGE ..... 3-18
- RESTORE SET UP ..... 3-18
RECALL FACTORY ..... 3-18
- MENU ACCESS ..... 3-19
SELF TESTS ..... 3-20
- HEX DUMP ..... 3-20
Menu Tree ..... Menu-1

4. Maintenance . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-1

Preferred Materials . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-1
4.1 Cleaning the Platen and Surrounding Areas . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-1
4.2 Cleaning Procedure . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-3
4.3 User Replaceable Parts . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-4

- Replacement of the Print Head . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-4
- Print Head Removal . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-4

Print Head Installation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-6
Replacement of the Platen . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-8

- To Remove the Platen . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-8
- To Install the Platen . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-9

5. Trouble Shooting and Diagnostics . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-1

- How to Use this section . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-1
5.1 Power-related Problems . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-2
5.2 Error Messages . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-2
5.3 No Printout . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-5
5.4 Operation-related Problems . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-6
5.5 Print-related Problems . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-7
5.6 Ribbon or Carriage-related Problems . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-9
5.7 Print Tests . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5-9

6. Colour Option . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 6-1
6.1 Install the Colour Option . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 6-1
6.2 Installing the 4-Colour Ribbon . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 6-5
7. Technical Data . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 7-1

## Table of contents

Appendices
Appendix A System Interface Descriptions ..... A-1
1 Serial Interface RS 232 C ..... A-2
2 Transmission Protocols ..... A-3
3 Parallel Centronics ${ }^{\circledR}$ Interface ..... A-13
4 Shared Operation ..... A-16
Appendix B Print Samples of Resident Fonts ..... B-1
Appendix C Character Set Tables ..... C-1
Appendix D Philips GP Quick Reference ..... D-1
Appendix E IBM ProPrinter Quick Reference ..... E-1
Appendix F EPSON LQ 2550 / ESC/P2 Quick Reference ..... F-1
Appendix G Barcode Quick Reference ..... G-1
Appendix H Miscellaneous ..... H-1

- Part Numbers ..... $\mathrm{H}-1$
- System Manager Information ..... H-3


## Preface

## About this Manual

This manual covers the printer in combination with an interface module (Personality Module).

The Personality Module (PM) is an integral part of the printer, and the type of PM used significantly influences the behaviour or operation of the printer.

The structure of this manual is such that the operator is led step-by-step through the various procedures. It starts with the unpacking and setting-up, moves on to detailed instructions for operating the printer and ends with the mounting of options.

The manual is divided into the following chapters:

1. Getting Started

This chapter covers the unpacking and setting-up of the printer and the installation of the PM (Personality Module) and ribbon cassette. By the end of this chapter the printer should be fully functional and tested in its primary form. It is not yet connected to the host computer system and no options are mounted.

## 2. Operating the Printer

This chapter discusses in great detail the operation of the operator panel, all menu functions, and the general operation of the menu. General status messages (e.g. COVER OPEN) are also described.

## 3. Configuring the Printer

This chapter explains how to configure the printer so that it can communicate with the corresponding system environment. Then this chapter thoroughly describes the printer's operating controls. In the last part you will find explanations of individual menu items.
4. Maintenance
shows how to clean the printer and how to replace the platen and the print head.
5. Trouble Shooting and Diagnostics
suggests how to identify and correct simple problems.
6. Options

This is a brief description of all available options. Supplements enclosed in the packaging of options may be inserted here.
7. Technical Data

All technical details or data about the printer can be found here.

## Appendix

A. Interface Description

This chapter gives hints about possibilities to connect the printer to the various computer systems and explains particularities depending on the version of the operating system. Additionally, cable connection is illustrated.
B. Print Samples of Resident Fonts
C. Character Set Table

All printer supported character sets are listed in this chapter.
D. Control Codes

Quick reference for Philips General Printer (GP) Emulation
E. Control Codes

Quick reference for IBM Proprinter and IBM Proprinter AGM (4207, 4208 XL 24) Emulation.
F. Control Codes

Quick reference for EPSON LQ 2550 / ESC/P2 Emulation.
G. Control Codes

Quick reference for Barcode programming
H. Miscellaneous

- Part Numbers
- System Manager Information


## Conventions Used in this Guide

The following conventions are used

## Bold

Note:

Caution:
[ENTER]

Headlines and important information
Contains special advice to facilitate handling
Contains important information to prevent damage of the equipment.

Key functions are always depicted in brackets or you will find the symbol of the key e.g $\otimes$

## 1. Getting Started

### 1.1 Unpacking

Check each item against the check list detailed below. Contact your delivery agent immediately if any item is missing or damaged.

The printer package should contain the following:

- Top cover (1)
Printer (3)
- Power cord (7)
- Ribbon cassette (2)
- Folder for the User's Manual (4)


A separate box contains the Personality Module (16) and the chapters 1-6 and Appendix A - G of the User's Manual. Please file the loosen pages into the folder.

Caution: Do not connect to the mains until the mains voltage selection has been checked and the PM is installed.

Note: Save all packing material and boxes for future transportation of the printer.

The printer drivers for Windows $®$ are available on Internet Address: http://www.psi-si.de

## A First Look at the Printer

Before installing the printer, spend some time familiarizing yourself with the printer.

- Top Cover (1)
- Tractor for Continuous Paper (7)
- Ribbon Cassette (2)
- Output Stacker (8)
- Printer (3)
- Power Switch (9)
- Front Cover (4)
- Power Cord Socket (10)
- Manual Front Insertion Guide (5)
- Tear Off Edge (11)
- Control Panel (6)
- Personality Module (PM) (12)



## Site Considerations

## Environment Conditions

- Install the printer in an area away from any heat source, air conditioner or strong drafts.
- Avoid installing the printer in a dusty or humid environment.


## Work Location

- Place the printer on the stand or a flat, solid level area such as a desk.
- Slots and openings in the printer's housing are provided for ventilation; always ensure that these openings are not obstructed
- When processing fanfold paper always place the printer with its front edge slightly off the edge of the table.
- Also ensure that the cables at the rear of the printer do not interfere with the output paper path


## Power Requirements

- No special wiring is required. A typical office wall outlet is sufficient
- Do not plug into the same wall outlet other equipment besides the printer such as coffee machines, copy machines or air conditioners.


## Transport Lock

You will find a red shipping tab under the top cover (2).
Grasp the top cover (2) on the left and right, lift it and remove the transport locking clip (12) from the print head drive belt.

## Re-packing Information

To ensure maximum protection when transporting the printer, always

- Remove any installed paper handling option.
- Remove the output stacker and the mains cable.
- Remove the ribbon cassette.
- Reposition the transport locking clip.
- Pack the printer in its original packing material and ship in its original box.



### 1.2 Installing the Personality Module

The printer functions only in combination with an installed interface module, called a Personality Module (PM).

The illustration below shows the standard PM with a serial and parallel interface. For detailed information about your PM, see Chapter 2.

To avoid damage due to electrostatic discharge, do not touch the pins or components of the PM.

- Never attempt to install or remove a PM while the printer is switched ON.

1. Remove the $\mathrm{PM}(6)$ from its packaging.
2. Insert the Personality Module (6) with the component side upwards until the connector fully engages. Hand tighten the two lock screws (13).


### 1.3 The Power Supply

## Mains Voltage Selection

In general, the mains voltage selection is determined at factory site.

Since an incorrect voltage selection can seriously damage the printer, please pay special attention to the following:

Make sure that the specified voltage on the voltage selector (11) corresponds to your mains voltage

- either 230 V for 180 to 264 V alternating current
- or 115 V for 90 to 140 V alternating current.

If it is necessary to change the voltage, slide the selector button to the required voltage selection.
Connect the printer to the mains using the power cord (6). First connect the cable to the power cord socket and then to the mains.

Note: As the power cord serves as a safety cut-off, its connection to the printer must be accessible any time.


### 1.4 Power ON/OFF Switch

The power ON/OFF switch (1) turns the printer's power supply ON or OFF.


When switched ON the printer performs an internal self-test which checks the electronics, the print head carriage movement and the interface. Power ON is indicated by a green LED on the operator panel and shows TEST.... .

If the message INSTALL RIBBON is shown, follow the steps in chapter 1.5 Installing the Black Ribbon Cassette.

After inserting the ribbon press $\otimes$ to continue. When the internal test has been completed successfully the display shows READY 4 ELQ or BUSY 4 ELQ in case data has already been transmitted.

Note: If the display shows anything different please refer to chapter 5 Troubleshooting and Diagnostics.

### 1.5 Installing the Black Ribbon Cassette

Note: Information about installing the 4-colour-ribbon cassette you will find in chapter 6 Colour option.

It is recommended to use only original ribbon cassettes (part numbers in
Appendix H) put out by our company. Using other ribbons will void your warranty.

Caution: Never manually move the print head fully to the right hand stop (you could change the way of the paper output).

Note: If the printer is busy (message BUSY 4 ELQ ) always press (8) before opening the top cover.

1. Switch the printer ON at the power switch; Power LED is lit and wait for the message READY 4 ELQ or INSTALL RIBBON.
2. If the printer is busy (message BUSY 4 ELQ) press $\otimes$
3. Lift the top cover to gain access to the ribbon cassette mountings. The print head will move to the correct position, aligned with the cut-out in the paper guide plate to facilitate the installation of the ribbon cassette.
4. Remove any excess slack by turning the green knob on the ribbon cassette clockwise. Move the ribbon feed guide to the position indicated on the plastic cover of the cassette.
5. Position the lower mounting pin (a) on the guide to the right. Slide the cassette downward. In this position, the green ribbon feed guide touches the green plastic clip.

6. Move the cassette toward you until you hear a click on both sides. Swing the ribbon underneath the print head for the final click. The audible clicks indicate that the mounting pins have engaged properly.

click!

Note When installed correctly the ribbon cassette has a sloping position.

7. Move the print head back and forth to settle the ribbon in the correct position.
8. If necessary remove excess ribbon slack by turning the green knob clockwise.
9. Close the top cover and press [START/STOP] $\varnothing$

### 1.5.1 Replacing the Ribbon Cassette

## Caution: The print head may be very hot immediately after printing!

- Close the top cover and switch the printer ON. Lift the top cover after the display shows the message READY 4 ELQ to gain access to the ribbon cassette mountings. The print head will move to the correct position, aligned with the cut-out in the paper guide plate to facilitate the installation of the ribbon cassette.
- Now swing the lower part of the ribbon to the back.

In this way the mounting pins loosen from the lower position.

- Then press the upper part of the ribbon to the back. Die upper mounting pins get free and the ribbon can be taken out.

- To install a new ribbon cassette please see 1.5 Installing the ribbon cassette (see pages before).


### 1.6 Selection of Operator Panel Language

The printer control panel and LCD display menu is used for the next steps. It is possible to change the language in the printer menu from English to French or German. The following example shows how to change from English to German:


### 1.7 Tractor

## Inserting Fanfold Paper for the First Time

- Ensure that the printer is placed in the depression on the top of the stand (option). If the printer is used without a stand, align the printer with the front edge of the table. The cables at the back of the printer should be tucked into the cable clips in order not to block the paper path.
- Hold the front of the manual insertion guide (4) on both sides, pull upwards against the resistance and remove by pulling forward.

- Pull the green tractor lock levers (12) toward you to release the tractors.
- Lock both green tractor levels
- Roughly adjust the tractors (13) to the paper width, and space out the paper supports (14) evenly.

- Open the tractor covers (16) and insert the paper.
- Close the tractor covers.
- Tighten the upper edge of the fanfold paper by slightly pushing the right tractor to the right. Make sure not to stress the paper too much.
- Lock the tractors by pushing back the green lock lever again.

- Reapply the manual front insertion guide

Note: If you do not refit the manual front insertion guide, there is no guarantee for a proper paper transport and accurate printing.

- Select the paper source TRACTOR using either the menu selection of the printer or your software (chapter 1.9).
- Initiate a printout (chapter 1.10), to check the margins. Readjust the tractors until the printout appears within the desired margins.


### 1.8 Manual Sheet Insertion

Install the output stacker (5) into one of the two rails in the top cover (2). The meaning of the two Positions:

- for paper with $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ or thicker use the steeper position (left picture);
- for thinner paper use the less inclined position (right picture).

- Check, if the manual sheet insertion is installed.
- Move the left hand paper guide into the position indicated by © (22) on the insertion guide. In this setting the margin has the smallest value possible.
- Adjust the right hand paper guide to the width of the paper to be used.
- Select MANUAL as the paper source using either the menu settings or your software (see also chapter 1.9 Paper Source Selection).


Note: If continuous form paper is in print position on the platen and has not been teared off, it will be moved forward and TEAR OFF PAPER will be displayed.

### 1.9 Paper Source Selection

The basic selections for PAPER SOURCE are:

- TRACTOR (Default, indicated by $\star$ )
- MANUAL


## Select 'MANUAL' as paper source on the operator panel

The following diagram shows which keys to press and what is displayed on the operator panel


Key
Display

1. Switch the printer ON and wait for the message READY 4 ELQ
2. ( (93)
LOCAL
3. (9) (95)

- TRACTOR

Note: Starting now the top row keys function as arrow keys.
4. [ $]$

- MANUAL

5. $[\Rightarrow]$

- MANUAL
READY
4 ELQ (93)

6. 

- After that LOAD MANUAL is displayed. Insert a single sheet evenly. After a short delay, the printer draws in the sheet.


### 1.10 Test Printouts

There are three test printouts available.

- PRINT TEST 1 shows a pattern of all printable characters. Use this to check if the printer operates correctly.
- PRINT TEST 2 produces a standard letter (ECMA-132) which can be used for measuring the printer's throughput.
- PRINT TEST 3 lists all available fonts, contains the page count to identify the actual number of printed pages, and gives information on technical releases which are intended for service purposes.

The print tests are printed using the parameters set in the menu, e.g. font, pitch etc. Refer to section "Menu Mode" for details.
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789!
ABCDEFGHIUKLMNOPQRSTUVWYYZabcde efghijk1mnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789!
! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789
! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz 012345678
89! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz 01234567
6789! SABCDEFGHTJKLMNOPORSTUYWYYZabcdefghi 1 kimnopqrstuvwxyz01234
56789 ! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jkimnopqrstuvwxyzo1234
456789! SABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123
3456789 !SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyzol
$\begin{aligned} & 23456789 \text { ! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz01 } \\ & 123456789 \text { ! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZabcdefghi } \text { k1mnopqrstuvwxyzo }\end{aligned}$
0123456789 ! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz
z0123456789! SABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmnopqrstuvwxy
$\begin{aligned} & \text { xyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jklmnopqrstuvw } \\ & \text { wXyz } 0123456789 \text { ! SABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPORSTUVWYYZabodefgh } i \text { klmnopgrstuv }\end{aligned}$
vwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jklmnopqrstu
uvwxyzol23456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghijk1mnopqrst
$\begin{aligned} & \text { stuvwxyz 0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmnopqr } \\ & \text { rstuvwxyz } 0123456789 \text { !SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWYYZabcdefgh } i \text { iklmnopq }\end{aligned}$
qrstuvwxyzol23456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jklmnop
pqrstuvwXYZ0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdef ghi jklmno
$\begin{aligned} & \text { opqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde fghi jklmn } \\ & \text { nopgrstuvwxyzo123456789! SABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi } \operatorname{jklm}\end{aligned}$
mnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWYYZabcdefghi $j$ kl
1mnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789 ! SABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi jk
K1mnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcae fghij
$\begin{aligned} & \text { jk1mnopqrstuvwxyz } 0123456789 \text { ! SABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghi } \\ & \text { i } j \text { k1mnopqrstuvwxyzol2 }\end{aligned}$
hi jklmnopqrstuvwxyzoi23456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefg
ghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdef
fghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789 ! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcde
$\begin{aligned} & \text { efghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcd } \\ & \text { defghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabc }\end{aligned}$
cdefghi iklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZab
bcdefghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOP $Q$ RSTUVWXYZa
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Zabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789 ! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXY
XYZabcdefghi jklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789! SABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVW

Eilzustellung
Norddeutsche Farbwerke кG
Herrn Dr. Grauert
Große Elbstraße 6
2000 Hamburg 4
$\begin{array}{llll}\text { Org. III 5/37 } \\ \text { 17.04.75 } & \text { V-A } & \text { Volkmann } & 434\end{array}$
Vordruckgestaltung für den allgemeinen Schrift
verkehr, für das Bestell- und Rechnungswesen Eilt
Sehr geehrter Herr Dr. Grauert,
Sie können das Schreiben der Briefe, Bestellungen, Rechnungen usw. sowie das Bearbeiten des Schriftguts rationalisieren, wenn die Vordrucke Ihres Unternehmens den folgenden Normen entsprechen:

DIN 676 Geschäftsbrief; Vordrucke A4
DIN 677 -; Vordruck A5
1N 679 Geschäftspostkarte; Vordrucke A6
DIN 4991 Vordrucke im Lieferantenverkehr; Rechnun
DIN 4992 -; Bestellung (Auftrag)
DIN 4993 -; Bestellungsannahme (Auftragsbestätigung)
DIN 4994 -; Lieferschein/Lieferanzeige
DIN 4998 Entwurfsblätter für Vordrucke
Diese Normen enthalten alle Einzelheiten für den sinnvollen und zweckmäßigen Aufdruck. Wenn dazu bei der Beschriftung genormter
Vordrucke DIN 5008 'Regel für Maschinenschreiben' beachtet wird entstehen übersichtliche und werbewirksame Schriftstücke.
Die beifgefügten 6 Mustervordrucke zeigen, daß das Beachten der Normen die künstlerische und werbewirksame Gestaltung der Vordrucke nicht ausschließt.
Da wir uns auf die Herstellung genormter Vordrucke spezialisier wird Sie und Ihre Geschäftsfreunde von den Vorteilen überzeugen

Mit bester Empfehlung
NORAG
Druckerei und Verlagshaus KG

## Herrmann

Anlagen
6 Mustervordrucke

## To start a print test:

## 1. Switch the printer ON (display shows READY 4 ELQ)

The following identifies the keys to press and the corresponding operator panel displays.

KEY
2. (93)
3.(94)
4. $[\Downarrow]--[\downarrow]$
5. $[\Rightarrow]$
6. $[\Uparrow]--[\Uparrow]$
7. $[\Rightarrow]$

## Display

LOCAL

MACRO SELECT

INSTALLATION $\rightarrow$

- INTERFACE $\rightarrow$
- SELF TEST
- PRINT TEST 1

Use $[\downarrow]$ to select PRINT TEST 2 or 3.
8. $[\Rightarrow]$
9. $\oslash(93)$

- PRINT TEST 1 *

PRINT TEST 1

The printer starts to print using paper from the defined paper source.
Note: A number of VALUE settings is summarized in a "Macro". It is possible to have a total of four macros, each with a different summary of VALUE settings.

To stop the print test:

| 1. $\varnothing(93)$ | $\leftarrow$ PRINT TEST $1 \rightarrow$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2. $[\leftarrow]$ | *SELF TEST |
| 3. $\varnothing(93)$ | READY |



### 1.11 Connection to a Computer

## Parallel/Serial Interface

- Switch the printer and computer OFF.
- Connect the interface cable coming from the computer to the printer's parallel (17) or serial port (18).
- The printer is set by default to SHARED interface with the following parameters:
- 8 Kbyte buffer,
- 8 bit,
- even parity,
- 9600 baud and
- DTR protocol.

SHARED means that, after Power-ON, both the serial and the parallel interfaces are available for data transfer. The port to which data is sent becomes active automatically. If the parallel or serial parameters need to be changed, see Chapter 2, Menu Mode, and Appendix A, Interface Description.


### 1.12 Emulation Selection

The following emulations are included in the PM Ser/Par E:

- Philips GP
in Macro 1
- IBM ProPrinter XL 24 in Macro 2
- IBM ProPrinter XL 24 AGM
in Macro 3
- EPSONLQ/ESC/P2 in Macro 4 (Default)

To change from one emulation to another, follow the procedure below. The example shows the keys to press along with the display information for a change from EPSON LQ / ESC/P2 in macro 4 to IBM ProPrinter in macro 2.

1. Switch the printer ON. The display shows READY 4 ELQ.
2. $\square$ MACRO 2
3. $[\Rightarrow]$

READY
2 IPP

The information READY 2 IPP indicates the selected macro and the emulation of this macro, for example:

| 1 | GP | Macro 1 with GP Emulation |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2 | IPP | Macro 2 with IBM Proprinter Emulation |
| 3 | AGM | Macro 3 with IBM Proprinter AGM Emulation |
| 4 | ELQ | Macro 4 with Epson Emulation. |

4 ELQ

A number of VALUE settings is summarized in a "Macro". It is possible to have a total of four macros, each with a different summary of VALUE settings.

## 2. Printer Operation

### 2.1 Control Panel

The control panel

- controls the set-up for communication with the host computer
- controls various parameter settings
- allows manual control of the paper handling
- gives information about the printer's status.

The 16-character Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) (51) indicates the current status of the printer. If an error occurs (e.g. COVER OPEN), the resulting error message overrides any other displayed message. When the error condition not longer exists, the original status information appears on the display.

The green Power ON indicator (53) is lit when the printer is supplied with power by setting the power ON/OFF switch to ON.

The yellow STOP indicator (52) is lit when the printer is in the STOP mode.
The printer enters the STOP mode either when (93) is pressed or when an error condition occurs such as NO PAPER, COVER OPEN, etc.


### 2.2 Function Keys

The function keys of the operator panel are grouped into two rows. The function of a key depends on the printer operation state. Following operation states are possible:

- READY or BUSY
- LOCAL


### 2.2.1 Short Description of Keys

- in the printer operation state READY or BUSY

| Number | Symbol | Functionality in ONLINE/READY Mode <br> 90 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 91 | Quick VERT.POS.ADJ. setting entry |  |
| 92 |  | FANFOLD DISPLACEMENT mode entry |
| 93 | No function |  |
| $94-97$ | [START/STOP] key - after pressing the key, the |  |
| printer enters the LOCAL mode. |  |  |
| MACRO SELECTION to enter the quick macro |  |  |
|  |  |  |

Note: It is possible to lock the function of the above described keys in the printer operation state READY or BUSY. Use the menu function MENU ACCESS with the setting QUICK SET OFF (see Page 3-20). If the keys are locked the printer shortly displays LOCKED when pressing one of the keys.

It is not possible to lock $\otimes$

- in the printer operation state LOCAL

| Number <br> 90 | Functionality in LOCAL Mode <br> EJECT FORM |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 91,92 | Paper movement up and down <br> START/STOP key - after pressing the <br> [START/STOP] key, the printer enters the READY |
| 93 | or BUSY mode. <br> MENU key - to enter the Menu Mode in the first <br> level. |
| 94 | PAPER SOURCE key - to start the paper source <br> selection. |
| 95 | FONT key - to start the font selection. |
| 96 | PITCH key - to start the pitch selection or to <br> confirm a certain set up, or to confirm the quick <br> macro selection. |

Note:
After pressing one of the keys activated. Now the keys of the top row can only be used as cursor keys to move within the menu tree (right $[\Rightarrow$ ], left $[\leftarrow]$, up [ $\uparrow$ ] and down [ل]).


### 2.2.2 Detail Description of Keys

- in the printer operation state READY or BUSY
- Quick Settings (only active if not locked in the menu function MENU ACCESS with QUICK SET OFF (see Chapter 3)).

- Top Row Keys

The Quick Macro Selection mode is entered when one of the top row keys
 4 will be selected. Pressing of key causes the printer to change in the STOP-mode and in the display appears the message MACRO 2. Pressing key $[\Rightarrow$ ] confirms the macro selection and changes the printer into the READY or BUSY mode. After this sample the printer the message on the display is READY 2 IPP. That means macro 2 with IBM ProPrinter emulation is selected.

If you press one of the above described key erroneously, press $\theta$ for correction.

Note: Macro selection means a change of all configuration parameters of the macro concerned

## - Lower Row Keys

In case a certain application requires a specific vertical positioning of the printout on a continuous form, two possibilities are provided for the READY or BUSY mode:

- vertical position adjustment VERT.POS.ADJ. with key (90)
- fanfold displacement FANFOLD DIS with key 会 (91) .
- Vertical Position Adjustment (VERT.POS.ADJ.) $\boldsymbol{\top}$ (90)

This can be set differently for each macro to exactly position the printout in relation to the top edge of the form in use. Using this function, the TOP MARGIN and BOTTOM MARGIN settings are taken into account as well.

The parameter is part of the printer's configuration set up memory and can be stored with the SAVE function.

The VERT. POS.ADJ. mode can directly be called up in the status READY or BUSY by pressing key $\boldsymbol{\top}$. In this case a set up is possible for the actually paper source of the selected macro. With TRACTOR V,
MANUAL V or BIN $\mathbf{x} \mathbf{V}(x=1-3)$ the printer asks for the value of the actually paper source.

This parameter covers a range of $-{ }^{15} / 60$ to $+{ }^{240} / 60$ of an inch（ 0.42 mm ）， where＂－＂is up the page and＂+ ＂is further down the page（see also the table in Chapter 3．4 Configuring the Printer for VERT．POS．ADJ．）．

Note：The set up of VERT．POS．ADJ．will become effective at the next page of the form．Therefore，it is recommended to perform VERT．POS．ADJ．set up as long as the paper is in the park position and before starting the print job．

## Fanfold Displacement（FANFOLD DIS）会（91）

A continuous form can manually be displaced by this function when it is either correctly loaded at the park position or already fed and partly printed．The Fanfold Displacement mode can only be called up in the status READY or BUSY

Note：The key has no effect when in the READY or BUSY mode．
As soon as the Fanfold Displacement mode is entered by pressing 䆓， the printer stops printing and changes into the LOCAL mode．The display shows the message FANFOLD DIS with the value $\mathbf{0}$ ．By pressing 全（91） or （92）a vertical displacement is possible．

|  | Key | Display |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 |  | READY |
| 4 ELQ |  |  |
| 2 | FANFOLD DIS 0 |  |
| 3 | FANFOLD DIS $0,+1,+2,+3 \ldots$ |  |
| 4 | FANFOLD DIS |  |
| $\ldots+3,+2,+1,0$ |  |  |
| 5 | $\square$ | READY |
| 4 ELQ |  |  |

Note：This parameter influences the line counter of the current print job and cannot be saved．A form feed（FF）sent by the application to the printer cancels all these settings

## How to Use this Function

Preprinted paper（e．g．bill of lading）has to be adjusted exactly．Following errors are possible：
－the printed value is too high－the fanfold paper has to be moved a little bit higher．
the printed value is too low－the fanfold paper has to be moved a little bit lower．No backward movement is possible for a form in park position or with the print head on the first line．The displacement will become effective on the next page．A negative displacement is possible if this function is used during a current print job（not at the beginning of the page）．

After pressing 全 again，paper is fed in case it was in the park position．In all other cases the paper remains at its actual position．Each further pressing of 夽 increases the line counter by increments of $1 / 60$ inch．Each further pressing of decreases the line counter by decrements of $1 / 60$ inch．Holding of 全 or causes the first 20 increments in single steps （ $1 / 60$ inch），thereafter in multiplier of ten which results in a continuous increment or decrement of the offset counter by $1 / 6$ inch．If the reached value is too high go backwards by pressing

The offset to the current position is shown on the display．Dependent on the status of the internal print buffer，the offset will be immediately executed after having resumed the printing or after having printed the remaining data in the internal print buffer．The offset value is not stored in the configuration set up and influences only the actual line counter．The maximum displacement range is the distance between the actual position and the page border plus one full page，but no more than 999 steps （nearly 1 inch）．A backward movement is possible from the actual position to the top of that page．

If the setting is procedure is completed change with $\square$（93）to the READY or BUSY mode．

There are two possibilities for the displacement to become active:

- If a positive displacement is set before starting the print job the printer will move the paper into the right position first and then start printing.
- If the displacement is set during a print job, the printer prints the contents of the print buffer. Afterwards, the displacement will become active. All following data are at the new position.
- Pressing [START/STOP] (93)

The printer changes into the LOCAL mode (displayed) and turns on the STOP indicator (52). All printer and paper handling operations are stopped. After pressing $\varnothing$ again, the printer quits the LOCAL or Menu mode.

### 2.2.3 Meaning of the Keys in the LOCAL Mode

Lower Row Keys

- Insert or Eject Key (90)

After pressing the Insert/Eject key, fanfold paper from the park position is fed into the print position, and fanfold paper from the print position is fed into the cut/tear off position (depending on the setting or the printer type). Paper that has been retracted into the cut/tear off by the Insert/Eject key will be moved automatically into the print position once the printer receives a print command.

Note: This key is not active while the top cover is open.

- The Paper Feed Key 全 (91) and the

Reverse Paper Feed Key (92)
The paper moves $1 / 90$ " $(0.28 \mathrm{~mm})$ in the direction of the arrows. Holding down the key results in continuous feeding.

Forward movement of paper from the park position is stopped at the print position. Forward movement of paper from the print position is stopped at the tear off position or it will be cut off (depending of the setting or of the printer type).

Backward movement of paper is stopped at either the park position, the print position or the tear off position.

## START/STOP Key $\otimes$ (93)

turns off the STOP indicator

- makes the printer ready for operation
- either starts the printout or self-test functions when selected (see

MENU mode) or causes the interface status to change to READY or
BUSY (displayed)
exits the MENU mode

### 2.3 Menu Mode

Instead of having a multitude of dip switches, all operator selectable features are accessable via the control panel and combined in the printer MENU.

This feature provides:

- easy handling of configuration (interface, etc.)
- quick parameter changes during an application
- a SAVE function to make changes permanent (until purposely reset), facilitating changes in default settings.

The menu has several levels:

- The first level contains the Main Functions
- Level 2 contains Sub-Functions
- Level 3 allows to select/confirm values and contains further Sub-Functions
- Level 4 allows to select/confirm values

For easy selection of paper source, font, pitch and macro, please refer to the Quick Settings section in this chapter.

### 2.3.1 To Activate the Menu:

- Press (8)

The printer is in the STOP mode, the display shows LOCAL

- Press in the top row of the control panel. As soon as the menu mode has been activated, the keys in the top row can only be used as cursor keys to move within the menu tree (up, down, right, and left).

Selection within a level:

- press [ $\uparrow$ ] or [ $\downarrow]$ key; the keys have a wrap around function, i.e. after the last value the first value is repeated.

On the display you will find the following four characteristic types of information:

$$
\text { MENU-TEXT } \quad \Rightarrow
$$

This display is only shown if you are in the Main Function. To switch to the next level press [ $\Rightarrow$ ].

$$
\Leftarrow \mathrm{MENU}-\mathrm{TEXT} \quad \Rightarrow
$$

Now you are in a Sub-Function. Movement in both directions is possible by using the $[\epsilon]$ key or $[\Rightarrow]$ key.

$$
\Leftarrow \text { MENU-TEXT } \quad *
$$

In the last level, labelled select/confirm values, the asterisk ( $\star$ ) to the right indicates the actual selection.

By using the [ $\uparrow$ ] or [ $\downarrow$ ] key, you are able to select a new value. You get the display:

$$
\leftarrow \text { MENU-TEXT }
$$

### 2.3.2 To Confirm Selection:

- press [ $\rightarrow$ ]; the confirmed value is displayed with an asterisk ( $\star$ ) in the last position as shown in the picture before.

Note: All cursor keys have an auto repeat function.
The MENU mode is left either by pressing $\theta$ or by moving to the MAIN FUNCTION level and then pressing the $[\epsilon]$ key.

A number of VALUE settings is summarized in a "Macro". It is possible to have a total of four macros, each with a different summary of VALUE settings. The standard macros have the following emulations defined:

```
Macro Emulation
    1 Philips GP
    2 IBM Proprinter XL 24
    3 IBM Proprinter XL 24 AGM
    4 EPSON LQ 1060, LQ 2550 / ESC/P2
```

Macro parameters can be tailored to specific application requirements. This feature is highly beneficial in case of frequent changes between applications in multi-user environment. Instead of having to adjust the menu settings each time before a particular application is starting, the user simply selects the macro containing the pre-defined set-up configurations.

### 2.3.3 How to Save Settings

The settings selected and confirmed are only active until the printer is switched off. In order to prevent losing your new settings you can save them using the MAIN FUNCTION SAVE.

| KEY | Display |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1. $\theta(93)$ | LOCAL |
| 2. New (94) | MACRO SELECT |
| 3. [ $\uparrow]--[\uparrow]$ | SAVE |
| 4. $[\rightarrow]$ | SAVING NOW (display is flashing) |
| 4a. | SAVE |
| 5. (8) (93) | READY 4 ELQ |

Note: The values of the "current settings" and the macro settings can be printed out on a list using the function PRINT OUT.


### 2.3.4 Quick Settings

 $\underset{\substack{\text { abo } \\ \text { abc } \\ \text { co }}}{\text { (97) are shortcuts in the menu tree. These particular selections can be }}$ changed quickly without having to move through the entire menu (see fold out of structure diagram). As soon as one of the keys in the top row has been activated, all four keys can only be used as cursor keys to move within the menu tree ([ $\uparrow]$ up, [ $\downarrow]$ down, $[~ \leftrightarrows]$ right, and $[~ \epsilon]$ left).


### 2.4 Status and Error Messages

The following messages are displayed if a condition exists which prevents normal operation of the printer.

## LOCAL

Entered when $\varnothing$ [START/STOP] was pressed. The STOP indicator is lit.

## COVER OPEN

Displayed when the top cover is open and the printer is in the READY or BUSY mode.

## LOAD BIN

Displayed whenever a form feed command or print command is given by the host to an empty ASF cassette. The printer enters the STOP mode.

## LOAD TRACTOR

Displayed when the host sends a form feed or print command to an empty tractor cassette. The printer enters the STOP mode.

## LOAD MANUAL

Same as LOAD TRACTOR except that the machine does not enter the STOP mode! Paper should be fed manually; after a short delay the printer will accept paper and starts printing.

## PAPER JAM TRF

PAPER JAM ASF
PAPER JAM MANUAL
Displayed if a form jams in the ASF or if successive line feeds fail to move fanfold paper correctly when tractor feed is used. Please refer to chapter 5
Troubleshooting and Diagnostics for suggestions how to remove a paper jam

## TEAR OFF PAPER

Displayed when a switch has been initiated from currently tractor to a different paper source and the fanfold paper could not retreat into the parking position. The operator must "tear off" the paper along the tear off edge which is located directly above the fanfold paper output (paper should be torn off from left to right). Press © to enable the fanfold paper to be fed backwards to a park position so that the newly selected paper source can be used

## REMOVE PAPER

This message will be displayed if the output for cut sheets (Bin or Manual) is selected to FRONT SIDE/KEY. After printing and moving out at the front side the printer enters the STOP mode and displays REMOVE PAPER. Remove paper and press (8)

Note: If there are error messages like AGC ERROR, HORIZ. DRIVE ERROR, or BUFFER OVERFLOW see Chapter 5.2 Error Messages, or call your service.

## 3 Configuring the Printer

### 3.1 What is Configuring

This chapter describes how to use the operator panel and menu settings to set up or configure your so that the printer and your computer system can communicate correctly with each other.

Communication between the two requires that both the computer operating system and the printer have the same communication settings or features. The most important of those are:

- protocol,
- baud rate,
- data bits,
- parity.

You may also need to change some of the printer's other features depending on your hardware and application requirements, for example:

- paper handling
- text processing.

The MENU mode allows you to access the configuration memory. All settings of the printer are stored in this memory and can be printed out on a list. The possible settings are discussed in detail in the following pages.

The menu printout illustrates the actual printer set-up. The following steps show which keys to use to start this printout

## KEY

1. Switch the printer ON
2. (93)
3.(94)
3. $[\Uparrow]$
4. $[\Rightarrow]$
5. $[\Rightarrow]$
6. (1) (93)

## Display

READY
4 ELQ

LOCAL
MACRO SELECT $\rightarrow$
PRINT OUT $\rightarrow$

- PRINT OUT
- PRINT OUT
- PRINT OUT

After feeding paper from the defined paper source, the printer starts to print. When printing is completed, the following message will be displayed:
8.

- PRINT OUT
9.READY
4 ELQ


### 3.2 Standard Configuration

The standard configuration is reflected in the following printout provided that no parameters have been changed.

| PRINT OUT |  | VErsion |  | 202xxxxx |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Interface |  | ADJustment |  |  |  |
| Buffer | 8 Kbyte | AGC | position | 24 |  |
| Word Length | 8 BIT | PLA | En GAP | 0 |  |
| I/F TYPE | Shared | PAPE | -IN ADJ. | 0 | *) |
| baud-rate | 9600 BPS | cut | v-pos | 0 |  |
| PARITY BIT | EVEN | UNI | Direct.cmd | YES |  |
| PROTOCOL | DTR | TRAC | F. fF-MODE | IGNore ff |  |
| Auto-status | no |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | menu access |  | ALL functions |  |
|  | CURRENT SEttings | MACRO 1 | MACRO 2 | macro 3 | MACRO 4* |
| Font | DATA | DATA | DATA | DATA | DATA |
| PRINT QUALITY | Le | LQ | Le | LQ | LQ |
| SUB/SUPER FONT | Yes | yes | Yes | yes | Yes |
| PITCH | 10 CPI | 10 CPI | 10 CPI | 10 CPI | 10 CPI |
| Line | 6 LPI | 6 LPI | 6 LPI | 6 LPI | 6 LPI |
| page Length | 72 Lines | 72 Lines | 72 LINES | 72 LINES | 72 LINES |
| TRACTOR V-pos | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| manual v-pos | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| bin 1 v-pos | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| BIN 2 v -pos | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| bin 3 v-pos | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Left margin | 1 Columis | 1 Columns | 1 columns | 1 columns | 1 columns |
| RIGHT MARGIn | 136 CoLumns | 136 CoLUMNS | 136 CoLumns | 136 columns | 136 Columns |
| top margin | 1 Lines | 1 Lines | 1 Lines | 1 Lines | 1 Lines |
| Bottom margin | 1 Lines | 1 Lines | 1 Lines | 1 Lines | 1 Lines |
| PERF. SKIp | Yes | Yes | Yes | yes | Yes |
| PAPER SOURCE | TRACTOR | TRACTOR | TRACTOR | TRACTOR | TRACTOR |
| PAPIER EXIT | Stacker | Stacker | Stacker | Stacker | Stacker |
| emulation | EPSON LQ | Philits GP | IBM PROPR. | IbM Propr. AGM | EPSON LQ |
| CHARACTER SET | EPSON EXT.GCT | NV-2.5 | IBM SET 2 | IBM SET 2 | EPSON EXt. GCT |
|  | 1: U.S.A. | 1: D -NV 2.5 | 1: U.S.A. | 1: U.S.A. | 1: U.S.A. |
| LINE MODE | $\mathrm{LF}=\mathrm{LF}, \mathrm{CR}=\mathrm{CR}$ | LF=LF, $\mathrm{CR}=\mathrm{CR}$ | LF=LF, $\mathrm{CR}=\mathrm{CR}$ | LF=LF, CR=CR | LF=LF, $\mathrm{CR}=\mathrm{CR}$ |
| \$\$-COMMAND | No | No | no | no | no |
| tear-OfF-MODE | No | No | no | No | no |
| PRE-SEPARATION | No | NO | No | No | No |

Note: An asterisk ( $\star$ ) indicates the actual macro.
*) This value is dependent on factory setting!

All this standard settings of the firmware will be restored with the menu function RECALL FACTORY

### 3.3 Explanation of the printout on the previous page

The heading PRINT OUT gives information about the VERSION of the printer's firmware.

The next two headings are followed by two columns of standard settings:

- INTERFACE - for communication between the computer operating system and the printer it is necessary to have the same communication settings or features. The standard settings are:

| - Buffer | 8 KByte |
| :--- | ---: |
| - Word Length | 8 Bit |
| - I/F Type | Shared |
| - Baud Rate | 9600 Bps |
| - Parity Bit | Even |
| - Protocol | DTR |
| - Auto-Status | No |

- ADJUSTMENT - all parameters are for adjustment of the printer and the paper (see also the following pages).

The last part of the printout is a list with all MACRO settings. In this case
MACRO 4 is marked with an asterisk ( $\star$ ) which identifies it as the active macro.
If you make modifications in the active macro without saving them you will find the new settings under the heading CURRENT SETTINGS. Unless they are saved, the modifications will stay active only until the printer is switched off in which case the macro settings marked with the asterisk will be reactivated.

### 3.4 Explanation of Individual Menu Items

## Main Functions

The following main functions are available:

## - MACRO SELECT

To select one of the four macros which can be used for quickly changing the printer settings for different applications. For example: Application A needs fanfold paper cut into single sheets with a top margin of one, application $B$ processes fanfold paper in a batch with a top margin of six. Simply by pressing MACRO SELECT the macro containing the information for the specific application requirements can be activated.

## CHANGE MACRO

In this part it is possible to create a macro for specific application needs (For detail information see chapter Function CHANGE MACRO beginning on the next page).

Note: Most parameters can be set via the control panel or via escape sequences from the host computer. The changes via escape sequences are visible in the column CURRENT SETTINGS

- INSTALLATION

In the first sub-function named INTERFACE you can manipulate parameters to enable communication with the host.
In the second sub-function labelled ADJUSTMENT you can optimize your printouts. (Detail information you will find in the Sub-Function INTERFACE /

## ADJUSTMENT

## SAVE

Any desired changes to the default settings can be saved here. After power on the new settings are activated.

While this function is operating the display flashes SAVING NOW.

PRINT OUT
This function initiates a printout of the parameter settings and macro
definitions. This printout is helpful for future reference and when macros are to be changed.
To actually start the print operation it is necessary to leave the STOP mode
(by pressing the $\otimes$ key).
While this function is operating the display shows PRINT OUT.

## Main Function CHANGE MACRO

- Font

A font is a family of characters with the same style and size. The appearance of the font can be varied by using attributes such as: size, bold, italic, etc.

The fonts included in the PM SER/PAR are:

- Data
- Letter Gothic
- Letter Gothic Italic
- Courier
- Micro
- Orator
- Orator-C
- Roman
- Prestige
- Script
- OCRA
- OCR B
- DATA Block
- DATA LARGE
see Appendix B for print samples.

PRINT TEST 3 lists all available fonts. The firmware of the printer indicates also barcodes. Detail information for printing barcodes are in Appendix G Barcodes Quick Reference)

## - Print Quality

Three different print quality levels can be selected:

- Draft quality (font "Data")
- Near letter quality (NLQ displayed with the font name)
- Letter quality (LQ displayed with the font name).

Different print qualities result in different print speed.

## - Sub/Super Font

When the SUB/SUPER FONT is set to "NO", sub and superscript text will be raised or lowered a half line, but the text size itself will not change.
When set to "YES", the text size will be reduced, and printed above or below the line.
Example: YES $\quad 5^{2}$ or $5_{2}$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { YES } & 5^{2} \text { or } 5_{2} \\
\text { NO } & 5^{2} \text { or } 5_{2}
\end{array}
$$

- Pitch

Indicates the number of characters printed per inch (10, 12, 15, 17, 18, 20 or proportional).
Any pitch setting can be combined with any available font. In some cases this may conflict with font designs. The pitch setting is, therefore, a matter of personal taste.

- Line

Determines the number of lines per inch (line space).

- Page Length (only for fanfold paper)

Page length is expressed in terms of lines within the range of 5 to 132 lines.
Any page length setting is based on six lines per inch, regardless of the number of lines per inch selected in the line setting or defined by the application.

The following indicates the number of lines for the most common paper sizes.

| Paper length <br> in inches | Appropriate setting <br> in no. of lines |
| :---: | :---: |
| 4 | 24 |
| $4^{1 / 1 / 6}$ | 25 |
| 6 | 36 |
| 8 | 48 |
| $8^{1 / 2}$ | 51 |
| $11^{2 / 3}$ | 66 |
| $11^{2 / 3}$ (default setting) | 70 |

The page length setting is the basis from which perforation skip, TEAR-OFF or CUT mode and margins operate.

An incorrect page length, therefore, gives an incorrect perforation skip.

## - Vertical Positioning Adjustment (VERT.POS.ADJ.)

This function changes the vertical position in the current macro for the five different paper paths TRACTOR V-POS ,MANUAL V-POS or BIN x V-POS ( $x=1$ up to 3 ) exactly position the printout in relation to the top edge of the form in use. It is meant to be a corrective parameter to meet variations in paper size and pre-printed material. Using this function, the TOP MARGIN and BOTTOM MARGIN setting are taken into account as well.

This parameter covers a range of $-15 / 60$ to $+{ }^{240} / 60$ of an inch, where "-" is up the page and " + " is further down the page.

The following table shows some values in inch and millimetres.


Attention:
The set up of VERT.POS.ADJ. will become effective at the next page of the form. Therefore, it is recommended to perform
VERT.POS.ADJ. set up as long as the paper is in the park position and before starting the print job.

- The left margin is set in $1 / 10$ " steps, depending on the actual selection. The first left margin position is $1 / 20$ " from the left edge of the paper which means that the letter H in regular "Data" font would be positioned $1 / 20$ " from the left edge of the paper. The left margin can be set to a maximum of $15 / 10^{\prime \prime}$.
- The right margin is set to print position 80, 132 or 136, always measured from the position of the first possible, not actual, left margin setting.

The left margin setting is influenced by the physical setting of the left tractor. The above specifications are only correct if the tractors are in the original positions, i.e. the left perforation is aligned with the centre mark on the plastic plate (distance between the marks is $1 / 10$ ").

The top margin indicates the first print line and is always set in steps of $1 / 6^{\prime \prime}$. The position of the first margin is $1 / 6^{\prime \prime}$ from the top of the paper and indicates the baseline of the letter $\mathbf{H}$ in upright "Data" font (see illustration).

The top margin can be set to a maximum of $16 / 6^{\prime \prime}$ down on the paper.


- The bottom margin indicates the last print line. Going beyond this margin automatically initiates a form feed. The bottom margin is always set in steps of $1 / 6$ ".

The bottom margin can be set to a maximum of $8 / 6^{\prime \prime}$.
The above specifications are influenced by the settings in "Vertical Position" (see section "V.POS" in this chapter).

## Perforation Skip

- If PERF. SKIP is set to YES the printer starts to print after specified top margin and stops printing before the bottom Margin.
- If PERF. SKIP is set to NO the printer ignored the top and bottom margin and prints from the very first line to the very last. That means that on a standard 11 " paper 66 lines are available for printing.


## - Paper Source

The printer offers three input possibilities:

- TRACTOR (fanfold paper)
- Manual
- ASF cassettes (optional), they can be accessed either individually or pooled in a specified sequence. Any combination or cassettes can be selected.

A corrective factor for the vertical positioning of the paper can be applied to each paper source and the Run-In-Sensor (see section VERT.POS.ADJ.).

Note: Please refer to chapter 7, Technical Data, for detailed media specifications.

- Paper Exit (only for single sheet paper)

It is possible to choose between STACKER and FRONT SIDE (manual front insertion). The desired paper exit can be selected via operator panel or software.

Note: If you choose the paper exit FRONT SIDE/KEY you have to confirm each output with a keystroke on $\otimes$. That is a useful option when using automatic sheet feeding which could cause a paper jam. As opposed to feeding automatically the ASF will only feed after a keystroke has been received.

## - Emulation

The emulation determines the set of commands available for the printer (see
Appendix D, E, and F). You can activate the following emulations:

- PHILIPS GP
- IBM PROPR.
- IBM PROPR.AGM
- EPSON LQ/ESC/P2

Note: The selected Emulation will also be stored in the actual macro. With a
 possible that the emulation will also be changed. Be careful: Do not change the emulation within an application.

## - Character Set

When selecting a character set it can be further specified by the corresponding national variants.

Detailed print samples are found in Appendix B and the Character Set Tables in Appendix C.

If a different macro is selected the default character set may change,
e.g. - PHILIPS GP emulation has the character set NV-2.5 as default.

- IBM PROPR. emulation has the character set IBM SET 2 as default.

EPSON / EDC/P2 emulation has the character set EPSON EXT.GCT as default.

## - Line Mode

If $\mathrm{LF}=\mathrm{LF}+\mathrm{CR}$ is selected, the printer performs a carriage return (CR) for every line feed (LF) received by the interface.

If $C R=L F+C R$ is selected, the printer performs a line feed (LF) for every carriage return (CR) received by the interface.

## - \$\$ Commands

This function causes $\$ \$$ either to be printed as $\$ \$$ or to activate ESC commands within an application.

If this function is set to YES the characters are interpreted by the printer in the following way:

- \$\$ like ESC [
- \$\$/ like ESC.
- Tear-off-mode (only for fanfold paper)

There are three possible settings within this mode:

- NO
- YES 10 SEC.
- YES 1 SEC.
- NO SPECIAL

The NO SPECIAL setting is to be used with critical forms which cannot handle the return movement of the paper.
With the YES setting the printer waits for one or ten seconds and, unless further data is received, moves the paper to the first perforation after the text. Regardless of this setting, whenever changing from fanfold to another paper source, the printer will request the fanfold paper to be torn off before the paper is moved to the park position.

- Pre-separation (is used for the ASF cassettes only) During normal printing, a sheet of paper is not inserted from an ASF cassette before the preceding sheet has been ejected. By selecting
PRE-SEPARATION = YES the sheets follow each other more closely, thereby increasing the printer's throughput.


## Main-Function INSTALLATION

- Sub-Function INTERFACE


## BUFFER

Buffer size in Kbyte. The maximum size is 48 Kbyte.

## - WORD LENGTH

Length of the data to be transferred; values are 7 or 8 bit.

- I/F TYPE (Interface Type)
the following types are available:
- Parallel
- Serial
- Shared

In case the SHARED interface type is selected the printer switches automatically between the parallel and serial interfaces. The first data received at the port determine which interface port becomes active. The other interface port will be closed so that only one interface is active at a time (for detailed information see Appendix A Interface Description).

The factory setting for the interface type are: Shared, 8 Kbyte Buffer, 8 bit word length even parity bit, 9600 baud rate, DTR protocol and AUTO STATUS = NO.

BAUD RATE (Only indicated if the serial interface is selected)
Controls the speed of data transfer. The possible transfer rates are: 600, $1200,2400,4800,9600$ or 19200 bps.

PARITY BIT (Only indicated if the serial interface is selected)
The data transfer will be checked by an even or odd parity bit. The values are: EVEN, ODD, NONE or IGNORE.

PROTOCOL (Only indicated if the serial interface is selected)
Selectable are: DTR, XON/XOFF or XON/XOFF+DTR.

- AUTO STATUS (Only indicated if the serial interface is selected)


## Possible values: YES or NO

If the Auto Status is set to YES the host is able to check the status of the printer (for example no paper or printer is in the STOP mode).

## - Sub-Function ADJUSTMENT

## - AGC Position

AGC (Automatic Gap Control) is an integral part of the paper handling capabilities of the printer. It is an automatic adjustment function which ensures an optimal print quality when using various paper thicknesses. The gap adjustment will automatically take place whenever paper is inserted

- after the paper source has been changed
- from park position (fanfold)
- after Power On
- after the printer has been in the STOP mode
- an AGC command has been issued.

The reference point for the measurement of the paper thickness is the
AGC Position of the first print line. Default for the horizontal AGC Position is 24 (= ink ribbon exchange position), any position from 4 to 131 (at 10 cpi) can be selected.
An adjustment of the AGC Position is only necessary if a measurement at the default position does not reflect the paper thickness of the area to be printed on or if there is a paper edge (e.g. of a label) in that position (the measuring process requires a plain paper-surface).
In addition to the automatic AGC function, random measurements of the paper thickness can be invoked by the AGC command, or a specific platen gap can be set using the PCC command. This is to meet the requirements of forms with complex properties. For details see the Programmers Manual for the printer.

## - Platen Gap

This adjustment is to be seen as a correctional offset to the platen gap set by the AGC (Automatic Gap Control) function or a PCC (Programmable Copy Control) command. It effects all paper paths.

The offset is within the range of -3 to +4 . One step is equal to $18 \mu \mathrm{~m}$. "-" reduces the gap, "+" increases it.

## - AGC Adjust

This is a basic adjustment which is automatically performed at the initial Power On of the printer, and which there after only needs to be initiated after having exchanged the print head or the platen. It is essential that the ink ribbon is installed and no paper is in the printer when this procedure is started. After activating this procedure, the printer displays
INSTALL RIBBON. If the ribbon is installed press $\theta$ to continue.
PAPER-IN ADJ (Paper-In-Sensor adjustment)
This parameter logically adjusts the base position of the Run-In-Sensor. The factory set value is such that the default is set to compensate specific mechanical tolerances. The adjustment range is from -3 to +4 in $1 / 60$ " steps $(0.42 \mathrm{~mm})$, where "-" means an upward movement and "+" a downward movement. When implemented, the adjustment applies to all paper paths.

## - CUTTING V-POS

This parameter can be used to compensate mechanical tolerances which may cause a misalignment between the perforation edge of a continuous form and the tear-off position..

The range within which variations can be met is $-15 / 60$ " to $+{ }^{16} / 60$ ", where "-" is up the page and "+" is further down the page.

The following table shows the possible values in inch and millimetres.


- Uni-Direct.CMD

If NO is selected, commands for uni-directional printing will be ignored.
The default setting of YES means that commands will be carried out to switch from bi-directional to uni-directional or vice versa.

## TRACT.FF-MODE (Tractor Form Feed Mode)

BLANK PAGES means, every Form Feed sent to the printer will be executed.
If you set NO BLANK PAGES, only a Form Feed before printable characters will be executed, that means blank pages will be ignored.

## Special Sub-ltems under INSTALLATION

- Language

The operator panel may display its messages in three languages. Select one out of the following: ENGLISH, DEUTSCH, FRANCAIS.

## RESTORE SET UP

With this function all settings of the last SAVE procedure will be restored.

## - RECALL FACTORY

All standard settings of the firmware will be restored. The contents of Page Counter and the Paper-in Adjust will not be changed. Use the function SAVE if the standard settings shall be active after power off/on.

## - Menu Access

There are four possibilities to define the access to the menu by the user.

- ALL FUNCTIONS All functions can be used (default)
- QUICK SET. OFF With this function the Quick Settings for Macro Selection, Vertical Position Adjustment, and Fanfold Displacement can be deactivated in the READY or BUSY mode. After pressing one of these keys the display shows shortly LOCKED (see also Chapter 2).

MACROS ONLY - Macros can be selected using the Quick Macro


- The Vertical Positioning Adjustment Mode can be entered
- The Fanfold Displacement Mode can be entered.
- NO ACCESS The menu is not accessible at all.

The menu function PRINT OUT can be activated regardless of the defined menu access.

Note: Only the system manager is able to reset the functions MACROS
ONLY and NO ACCESS (look at the red page at the end of this book).

## Self Test

PRINT TEST 2
PRINT TEST 3

I/F Test
(see Chapter 1.10 Test Printouts) (see Chapter 1.10 Test Printouts) gives information about technical releases and is intended for service purposes only. Among other information, the page counter identifies the number of pages printed.
This function is used to test the serial interface. It enables test data to be sent out from the printer and returned by means of a closed loop connector plugged into the serial interface connector. The test data used consists of PRINT TEST 1.

- Hex Dump

This function makes it possible that the data received by the printer can be analyzed. Control codes are no longer carried out, instead all data is printed in hexadecimal format and as ASCII characters. Any non-printable characters, such as carriage return are only represented as a single dot (.) in the ASCII list.

It may happen that the transmission of data to the printer will be interrupted during Hex Dump. In this case, printing of data received after the break is started on the next available line. The result is an irregular right margin which is not an indicator for any loss of data.

[CHANGE MACRO \# $\quad \rightarrow$ ] ) ) [ - FONT (\# indicates the actually selected macro, e.g. CHANGE MACRO 4)

```
*
\begin{tabular}{rl} 
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
& \(*\) \\
[-PRINT QUALITY \\
& \(*\) \\
[- SUB/SUPER FONT \\
& \(*\)
\end{tabular}

\begin{tabular}{cc}
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & [- PRINT QUALITY \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & {\([-\) SUB/SUPER FONT } \\
\(*\) & \(*\) \\
\(*\) & \(*\)
\end{tabular}
```

$\rightarrow$ ] )) [-DATA [- L.GOTHIC [- L.GOTHIC-I - COURIER [- MICRO - ORATOR [- ORATOR-C [- ROMAN [- PRESTIGE [-SCRIPT [- OCR A [- OCR B [- DATA BLOCK [- DATA LARGE

*assa $\begin{aligned} & a \\ & a \\ & a\end{aligned}$
Dependent on
Dependent on
PRINT QUALITY
LQ or NLQ

LQ/NLQ ]
] ) ) )
$[-L Q$
$[-N L Q$
*]
$\rightarrow]$ )) [- NO
*] (macro 1)
(macro 2, 3, 4)



| * | * |  | * |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| * | * |  | [ - IBM CODE PAGE | $\rightarrow$ ] | )) [ $\leftarrow 1$ P PAGE 437 |
| * | * |  | * |  | [-2: PAGE 850 |
| * | * |  | * |  | [ $-3:$ PAGE 860 |
| * | * |  | * |  | [ $\leftarrow 4$ : PAGE 863 |
| * | * |  | * |  | [-5: PAGE 865 |
| * | * |  | * |  | [ $-6:$ PAGE 858 |
| * | * |  | \# |  |  |
| * | * (Macro 4) |  | [ $\llcorner$ EPSON EXT. GCT | $\rightarrow$ ] | )) $[\leftarrow 1:$ U.S.A. |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $-2:$ FRANCE |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $-3:$ GERMANY |
| * | * |  |  |  | [-4: U.K. |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $-5:$ DENMARK |
| * | * |  |  |  | [-6: SWEDEN |
| * | * |  |  |  | [-7: ITALY |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $-8:$ SPAIN |
| * | * |  |  |  | [-9: JAPAN |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $-10:$ NORWAY |
| * | * |  |  |  | [-11: DENMARK 2 |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $-12:$ SPAIN 2 |
| * | * |  |  |  | [-13: LATIN AM. |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $-14:$ TURKEY |
| * | * |  |  |  | [ $\leftarrow 15:$ LEGAL |
| * | * |  |  |  |  |
| * | [ - LINE MODE | $\rightarrow$ ] ) ) | [ $\llcorner\mathrm{LF}=\mathrm{LF}, \mathrm{CR}=\mathrm{CR}$ | *] |  |
| * | * |  | $[\leftarrow L F=L F+C R$ | ] |  |
| * | * |  | $[-C R=L F+C R$ | ] |  |
| * | * |  | $[\leftarrow L F, C R=L F+C R$ | ] |  |
| * | * |  |  |  |  |
| * | [ $\leftarrow$ \$ COMMAND | $\rightarrow$ ] ) ) | $[\leftarrow \mathrm{NO}$ | *] |  |
| * | * |  | [ -YES | ] |  |





## 4. Maintenance

## Preferred Materials

The following materials and cleaning lubricants are recommended for use in the maintenance procedure:

- Lint-free cloth
- Platen Cleaner C/CP09, commercial no: 870900410931
- Vacuum cleaner.
4.1 Cleaning the Platen and Surrounding Areas

The user should clean the printer every six months or after 50,000 prints, whichever occurs first. If you experience paper feed problems, or if the print head carriage movement becomes restricted, cleaning should be carried out more often.

Note: the Page Counter (PGCNT) in the PRINT-TEST 3 will give you information about actual number of printed pages.

## PRINT TEST3


$\begin{array}{llllllllllllllllllllllll}1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 & 15 & 16 & 17 & 18 & 19 & 20 & 21 & 22 & 23 & 24\end{array}$

## data

!"\#\$\%\&'()*+,-. $101234567890:$; <=>? . . . . . .

Note: The number following PM1 identifies the micro program and the number following PM3 identifies the character set.

### 4.2 Cleaning Procedure

1. Power the printer $O N$ and remove the top cover
2. Remove the ribbon cassette.
3. Thoroughly brush and vacuum all accessible areas to remove any paper flock and dust.
4. Clean the platen's surface, the paper pressure rollers and the transport rollers using the platen cleaner. In order to access the transport rollers loosen the green screws and remove the metal bar with the metal rollers.
5. Clean the covers and the operator panel with a damp, lint-free cloth. Do not use cleaning solvents or excessive amounts of water.
6. Insert the ribbon cassette (see Chapter 1.5 Installing the Ribbon Cassette).
7. Remount the top cover

## 4.3 User Replaceable Parts

## Replacement of the Print Head

The print head has an expected life time of approximately 350,000 pages (see Page Counter (PGCNT in PRINT TEST 3).

## Print Head Removal

Caution: The print head may be very hot immediately after printing.

1. Remove the top cover
2. Switch the printer ON, lift and remove the top cover. The print head will move to the correct position, aligned with the cut-out in the paper guide plate
3. Switch the printer OFF again
4. Remove the ribbon cassette (3)
5. Disconnect the print head cable (4)
6. Using the supplied tool (7), loosen the two captive screws (6) retaining the print head (5). Use the enclosed plastic case as an extension for the socket head cap key
7. Remove the print head (5).


## Print Head Installation

Ensure that the printer is switched OFF. For print head installation, the carriage should be aligned with the cut-out in the paper guide plate (same position as for removal procedure).

1. Hold the print head (5) in its mounting position and press it against its stop in direction of the platen. The two noses (9) of the adjustment guide (8) support this procedure.
2. Fasten the captive screws (6):

- fasten the right screw to its stop
- tighten the left screw
- now tighten the right screw
- put the enclosed plastic case onto the socket head cap key and first tighten the right and then the left screw.

3. Reconnect the print head cable (4) and fasten it.
4. Mount and close the top cover.
5. Switch the printer ON, open the top cover after the message

READY 4 ELQ, and insert the ink ribbon cassette.
6. Run the MENU-function AGC ADJUST with ribbon cassette installed but without any paper inserted in the printer.


## Replacement of the Platen

The platen needs to be replaced after approximately 800,000 pages (see Page Counter (PGCNT) in PRINT TEST 3).

## To Remove the Platen (61)

1. Remove the output stacker
2. Lift and remove the top cover
3. Remove the ribbon cassette
4. Switch the printer OFF
5. Position the print head to the very right
6. Release the green plastic platen clamp (1) on the left platen mounting
7. Move platen (2) approximately 10 mm to the left, lift the left end of the platen free off its mounting and withdraw the platen from the right mounting.
8. Lift the platen to the left underneath the print head and take it out.


## To Install the Platen

Ensure that the printer is switched OFF.

1. Place platen (2) in the vacant space between print head and metal bar.
2. Move print head from its right hand position into the centre.
3. Fit the gear wheel end of the platen into the right hand side mounting. Be careful not to damage the gear wheel.
4. Ensure that the plastic platen clamp (1) is in the upright position, push the platen in to its mounting and lock in position by pushing the tag on the clamp to the rear.
5. Install the ribbon cassette.
6. Fit and close the top cover.
7. Fit the output stacker.
8. Run the MENU-function AGC ADJUST with ink ribbon cassette installed but no paper inserted.


## How to Use This Section

1. Find the category in which your problem occurs. The problem categories are:

- Power-related Problems
- Error Messages
- No Printout
- Operation-related Problems
- Print-related Problems
- Ribbon or Carriage-related Problems

For example, if the print appears very light on the paper, look at Section "Printrelated Problems".
2. Find the symptom description that most closely matches the printer symptom. In this example you would look at the symptom "Print faint or of poor quality."
3. Try the first suggestion under that heading.
4. If the suggestion does not cure the problem, try the next suggestion.
5. If none of the suggestions enable you to continue printing, or if the fault is not listed, contact your service office.

Each time the printer is switched ON the display indicates TEST while the internal self-tests are run. If the test is completed successfully READY 4 ELQ will be displayed. If an error message is displayed please refer to the following section. All other messages on the display are described in section 2.4 Status and Error Messages.

### 5.1 Power-related Problems

- Power indicator does not come On when power is switched On
- Check that the power cord and plug are securely fitted to the printer and to an electrical outlet.
- Ask for the power connector connections (and fuse, if fitted) to be verified.
- Ask for the building electrical supply to be verified.


### 5.2 Error Messages

After switching the power ON the printer runs a self test. During the test the following messages may be shown on the display:
\(\left.$$
\begin{array}{||l|l|l||}\hline \hline \text { Display } & \text { That means ... } & \text { Cause / Action } \\
\hline \hline \begin{array}{l}\text { No } \\
\text { information, } \\
\text { POWER ON } \\
\text { indicator not } \\
\text { lit. }\end{array} & \text { No power } & \text { - Mains cable not connected } \\
\hline \begin{array}{l}\text { green and } \\
\text { yellow LED } \\
\text { give light but } \\
\text { no reaction }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { hang up in reset after } \\
\text { power on }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { - Print PSU defective } \\
\text { - Print CU-DEV defective }\end{array} \\
\hline \text { \#\#\#\#\#\#\#\# } & \begin{array}{l}\text { Firmware does not } \\
\text { work }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { - PM not inserted } \\
- \text { PM not correctly inserted } \\
- \text { no firmware on PM } \\
- \text { PROMs not correctly installed }\end{array} \\
\hline \begin{array}{l}\text { TEST.... } \\
\text { flashing) }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { Initializing of the } \\
\text { EEPROM }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { - After first POWER ON } \\
\text { with PM }\end{array}
$$ <br>

\hline -Change of the PM\end{array}\right\}\)| - Contents of the EEPROM |
| :--- |
| faulty |


| Display | That means ... | Cause / Action |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| NV RAM OK | Error on the RAM of the Control Unit | - Control Unit defective |
| RAM OK | Checksum error (P)ROM 1 | - (P)ROM defective |
| ROM 1 OK | No Fonts available | - Character generator $\mathrm{P}(\mathrm{ROM})$ on PM damaged or missing |
| ROM 2 OK | RAM on Memory Card damaged | - Memory Card defective |
| MC OK | Fault on Control Unit | - Control Unit defective <br> - Type mismatch of PM and Control Unit <br> - PBC (Printer Base Controller) on Control Unit damaged - SPC (Speed Controller) on Control Unit damaged <br> - Transport lock not removed |

If all tests have been passed successfully the following message will be displayed:

| Display | That means... | Cause / Action |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| READY/BUSY | The Printer is OK | - Printer ready for <br> operation |

During normal operation the following error messages may occur (for further operator panel messages please refer to section 2.4 Status and Error Messages):

| Display | That means... | Cause / Action |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| AGC ERROR | AGC ADJUST procedure fault | - Distance print head and platen faulty <br> - Print head loose <br> - Platen incorrectly installed <br> - Ribbon not inserted <br> - Horizontal drive without function <br> - Platen got dirty |
| HOR. DRIVE ERROR | Horizontal drive without function | - Horizontal drive blocked <br> - Paper jam <br> - Distance of platen gap too narrow <br> - AGC procedure on not workable position <br> - Platen incorrectly installed <br> - No AGC ADJUST after print head or platen replacement <br> - Device electronic fault <br> - Encoder strip missing <br> - Horizontal drive fault |
| BUFFER OVERFLOW | Handshake protocol error | - Check CTR - CTS or <br> XON - XOFF protocol <br> - Repeat data transfer |
| PARITY ERROR | Protocol error | - Check protocol setting of printer and host <br> - Repeat data transfer |


| FRAMING ERROR | Protocol error | - Check protocol setting of <br> printer and host <br> - Repeat data transfer |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

### 5.3 No Printout

- Self-test printout does not start
- Make sure that you have closed the cover.
- Check if paper is loaded in the printer.
- Refer to section 1.10 Test Printouts.
- Printing does not start
- Make sure that the READY or BUSY message is displayed. If there is a different message displayed please refer to the above error message table or to section 2.4 Status and Error Messages.
- Make sure that the printer is connected to the host computer. (Refer to Section 1.11 Connection to a Computer). Make sure that connectors are properly fixed at both ends.
- Make sure that the printer is receiving data from the host computer
- Make sure that the correct protocol is enabled. (Refer to section 3.2 Standard Configuration and Appendix A Interface Description)
- Make sure that you have selected the correct port (if the automatic feature has not been selected).
- Make sure that paper is loaded.
- Make sure that the ribbon is installed.
- Examine the ribbon path. Does the ribbon pass in front of the whole printhead? Adjust the ribbon if necessary.
- Fanfold paper does not advance
- Make sure that the fanfold paper source tractor is selected
- Single sheet paper does not advance
- Make sure that the paper source MANUAL or BIN $\mathbf{x}(x=1$ up to 3 ) is selected.


### 5.4 Operation-related Problems

- Paper is not positioned at perforation for tear-off feature

Select the correct form length using the Set-up feature.

- Reset top of form by performing a Parking function.
- Refer to section 3.4 Vertical Positioning Adjustment


## - Paper tears or jams

Examine the paper path; remove any obstructions
Is the paper too loose or too taut between the tractors?
If the holes in the paper are deformed at their outer edges, the paper is too taut.
If the paper rises between the tractors, it is too loose.
Readjust the tractor spacing so that the paper lies smoothly but without any tension.
Ensure that the paper is horizontally aligned on the pins.

- Open the printer's top cover. If necessary, loosen the two green screws and remove the paper guide plate to gain access to the paper.
- Parking paper and resetting top of form
- Tear off the paper at the perforation line.
- Press [0
- Press until the paper is in the park position.
- Press . Printing will resume at the top of the next form.
- Print head carriage does not move smoothly/does not move at all

Examine the paper pathway. Remove any obstructions.

- Examine the carriage area for obstructions. Remove, where necessary. Press the key $\theta$ when the paper pathway is cleared.
- Make sure that the transport lock has been removed.


## - Single sheets are skewed

- Adjust ASF cassette paper guides.
- More information you will find in the enclosed references of the ASF cassette.


### 5.5 Print-related Problems

- Print faint or of poor quality
- Have you used the correct paper? See Chapter 7 Technical Data which contains a full specification of the paper you can use. Replace the paper if it does not match the specification.
- Make sure that the ribbon is stretched correctly.
- Does the ribbon need changing? Replace it with a new ribbon if necessary.
- Is the ribbon cartridge properly installed? Adjust as necessary.
- Characters do not print evenly or are not uniform in pitch
- Examine the paper pathway for dirt or other obstruction that may cause the gap between print head and platen to vary. Remove the obstruction.
- Print lines overlap
- Examine the paper pathway for dirt or other obstructions that may prevent the platen from rotating freely. Remove the obstruction.
- On preprinted forms, the printing on the copies is not aligned with the preprinted matter

Refer to section 3.4. Vertical Positioning (VERT.POS.ADJ.)

- Part of printed text is missing (loss of data)
- If you are using Serial communications check the buffer control setting in Set-up.
- Check the data flow control setting on the host computer.
- Font cartridge has been installed, but the printer is still using internal fonts
- Switch the power OFF and check that the font cartridge has been correctly inserted.
- Check that the font cartridge has been selected in the printer Set-up (see Appendix B).

If the printout or the character set is not ok, the following procedure can help to clear the situation.

| Action | Result | Check |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Select and start PRINT TEST 1 | Print not OK? | - PAPER SOURCE <br> selection <br> - Ribbon tension and condition <br> - Print head condition |
| Stop SELF TEST and start external printing | No printing starts | - Printer ONLINE READY <br> - Interface cable for proper connection - Interface selection |
|  | Some characters not correct | - Emulation <br> - Character set <br> - National version <br> - Word length <br> - Baud rate <br> - Parity bit <br> - Protocol |
|  | Font and pitch quality fault | - Font <br> - Pitch <br> - Line space |
|  | Problem still there? | - Call service |

### 5.6 Ribbon or Carriage-related Problems

- Ribbon Problems
- Make sure that the ribbon is:
- Stretched correctly
- Not worn thin or dry
- Not torn or damaged in any other way
- Not jammed
- Carriage does not move smoothly
- Examine the paper pathway. Remove any obstructions. Check that al packing material is removed.
Examine the carriage area for obstructions. Remove where necessary.
5.7

Print Tests
There are three different print tests as well as one interface test built into the printer.

- I/F TEST is used to test the serial interface. It initiates data to be sent from the printer and be returned by means of a closed loop connector plugged into the serial interface connector. The test data used consists of PRINT TEST 1

Note: $\quad$ Detailed information about the print tests you will find in chapter 1.10 Print Tests.

## 6. Colour Option

### 6.1 Installing the Colour Option

The visual appearance of any printout can be enhanced by using the colour option in combination with a 4-colour ink ribbon.

When colour printing is not required it is recommended to use a black ribbon in order to increase the lifetime of the colour ribbon. The colour option does not have to be removed when printing with a black ribbon.

## To Install the Colour Option

- Switch the printer ON
- Lift the top cover (2) as shown in the illustration.
- Remove the black ink ribbon cassette (11).
- Switch the printer OFF

Caution:The print head may be very hot immediately after printing.


The mounting of the colour option is best done from the rear of the printer.

- Move the print head to a centre position.
- Remove the connection plug (40) out of the plastic shaft (39) which is holding down the string of cables leading to the print head
- Insert the blue plug (40) into the connector socket (41) of the colour option.


Hold the colour option as illustrated below:


Mount the colour option on to the print head carriage in such a way that the pointed edge (44) fits into the slot (45) and the hole (42) fits onto the pin (43). Press it firmly in position until the spring clip (46) engages.

- Tuck the cable (47) behind the plastic clip (48) and under the plastic fixture (65) to avoid the cable coming in contact with the moving horizontal belt (49) or the mounted ink ribbon cassette.

- Replace the printer's top cover.
- Switch the printer ON.


### 6.2 Installing the 4-Colour Ribbon

The printer must be turned ON.

- Remove any excess slack by turning the adjuster (54) clockwise.
- Align the green ribbon feed guide (53) with the arrow on the left side of the plastic cover of the cartridge.

- Engage the upper pins (55) of the ink ribbon cartridge in the green guides at the side (56). In this position the ribbon can be swung down.

- Position the ribbon feed guide (53) between the print head (57) and the protective shield. This swings the cartridge down until the teeth of the green ribbon feed guide engage in the cog wheel of the colour feature.

Note: If the ribbon is kept constantly taut while being swung into position it is particularly easy to thread it between print head and platen.
"click!"


Note: Contrary to the black ribbon cassette, the colour ribbon cassette has a straight position!

## 7. Technical Data

The following technical data refers to the standard Personality Module PM SER/PAR.

## Print head technology

Serial Impact Dot Matrix (SIDM) technology.

## Paper path

Flat bed technology.

## Print head

24 needles, needle diameter 0.25 mm ( 0.01 inch), lifetime approximately 350,000 pages (standard DIN letter)

## Fonts

Data, Letter Gothic, Letter Gothic Italic, Courier, Micro, Orator, Orator-C, Roman, Prestige, Script, OCR A, OCR B, DATA BLOCK, DATA LARGE; all fonts (except Data, DATA BLOCK and DATA LARGE) in Letter Quality (LQ) and Near Letter Quality (NLQ). OCR A, OCR B only in LQ.

## Character Attributes

Bold, double strike, italic, underline, double underline, overline, strike through, sub/superscript, double/triple height, double/triple width, double/triple/quadruple size, condensed.

## Character Pitch

Standard character pitches are: 10, 12, 15, 17, 18, 20 cpi and proportional. In addition, commands are defined to select non-standard character pitches. It is also possible to print overlapped characters. Fonts will be compressed if smaller pitches are selected.

## Emulations

- IBM ${ }^{\circledR} 4207$ Proprinter XL24 (AGM)
- EPSON ${ }^{\otimes}$ LQ 1060/2550 / ESC/P2
- Philips GP 310/490


## Print Speed (at 10 cpi )

- Draft Quality 600 cps ,
- Near Letter Quality 300 cps ,
- Letter Quality 150 cps*.


## Throughput acc. to ECMA-132

Standard Letter (Dr. Grauert)
a) Sinlgle Sheet

Draft Quality: 490 pages/h
Near Letter Quality: 398 pages/h
Letter Quality: 248 pages $/ \mathrm{h}$
b) 1-play fanfold

Draft Quality: 507 pages/h
Near Letter Quality: 398 pages/h
Letter Quality: 251 pages/h
Character Sets (see also Appendix B "Character Set Tables")

- ISO-7-Bit in 11 national versions incl. ASCII, IBM-PC and -PS/2 (multilingual)
- ISO 8859/1 IBM Character Set 1/2 incl. 14 national versions.
- IBM Code Page 437, 850, 860, 863, 865.
- EPSON Extended Graphic Character Set incl. 15 national versions.


## Barcodes

- Code 39, 2 of 5 industrial, 2 of 5 interleaved, Codabar (Monarch), EAN 8 , EAN 13, Code 93, MSI Mod 10/10, UPC-E, UPC-A, Code 128 (incl. EAN 128), and Postnet (see also Appendix G Barcode Quick Reference)


## Graphics

Max. resolution (V x H). $180 \times 360$ : Single pass
$360 \times 360$ : Double pass.

## Print format

136 characters at 10 cpi

## Line Spacing

2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 12 n/360 lpi

[^0]
## Platen Gap Control

The Automatic Gap Control (AGC) adjusts the distance between print head and platen according to paper thickness and programmable Platen Gap Control (PCC).

## Ribbon

Black fabric ribbon for more than 16 million characters.
4 -colour ribbon in connection with the colour option for ca. 3,5 million characters.

## Copies

1 original +5 copies (max. total form thickness 0.5 mm [ 0.02 inch] ).

## Interface

- Parallel Centronics ${ }^{\circledR}$
- Serial RS-232-C/V. 24


## Buffer

- Up to 48 Kbyte in selectable sizes.


## Diagnostics

Selftest, 'Hex dump', device status and remote diagnostics via interface.

## Control Panel

16 character LCD for menu controlled setup, status- and error messages.

## Dimensions

- Width $\quad=635 \mathrm{~mm}$ (25.4 inch)
- Depth $\quad=390 \mathrm{~mm}$ (15.6 inch); with all three ASF cassettes 415 mm
(16.6)
- Height $=273 \mathrm{~mm}$ (10.92 inch) without stacker or ASF
$=400 \mathrm{~mm}$ ( 16 inch ) with all three ASF cassettes


## Weight

Approximately 23 kg ( 50 lb )

## Rated Voltage

100-120/200-240 V~ at rated $f=50-60 \mathrm{~Hz}$

## Power Consumption

160 W operating, 40 W stand by

## Environmental Temperature <br> Operating: $\quad+10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+50^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right.$ to $\left.+95^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> Storage: $\quad-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$

## Relative Humidity

20\%-80\% (operating)
$30 \%-70 \%$ (operating with ASF cassettes)
$5 \%-85 \%$ (storage)

## Noise

$\leq 52 \mathrm{~dB}(\mathrm{~A})$ (operating) acc. to ISO 7779

## MTBF

$10,000 \mathrm{~h}$ at $25 \%$ duty cycle

## Agency Approvals

Acc. to VDE (IEC 950 and CSA 22.2/No. 220-M91), UL 478, CSA; listing mark for Canada is C-UL

## EMI Approvals

Acc. to regulation of FTZ/FCC, class B

## Printer Stand

Provides is the optimum work station convenience
width $=630 \mathrm{~mm}$ (25 inch)
depth $=540 \mathrm{~mm}$ (21.4 inch)
height $=730 \mathrm{~mm}$ (28.5 inch)

## Colour Option

see chapter 6

## Paper Handling

Integrated push tractor with park position for continuous paper, zero tear off, manual front insertion with face down stacker ( 360 sheet capacity, $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ )
Paper width max 15". Automatic Paper(form set)- and envelope feeder with up to three selectable cassettes for max. A4-form.

- Manual Insertion

Print media suitable for manual insertion:


- Tractor Feed

Continuous forms (1 original plus 5 copies) suitable for tractor feed:

|  | minimum | maximum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Paper width | 101.6 mm (4") | 406 mm (15.8") |
| Paper length | 76.2 mm (3") | 558.8 mm (22") |
| Paper weight |  |  |
| 1-ply | 60g/m² (16 lb/ream) | $90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ |
| (24 lb/ream | ) |  |
| multiply (per sheet) | $40 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}(10 \mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{ream})$ |  |
| $60 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (16 lb/ream) |  |  |
| total set |  | $350 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ |
| (93 lb/ream) |  |  |
| Total paper/form thic | ess | 0.5 mm (0.02") |

## Automatic Insertion (option)

Suitable for automatic insertion of cut sheets and thin form sets (Cassette A) or for thick and inflexible sheets, not interrupted top-glued forms, and envelopes (Cassette B).

Automatic Insertion with Cassette A

|  | minimum | maximum |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Paper width: | $105 \mathrm{~mm}\left(4.13^{\prime \prime}\right)$ | $305 \mathrm{~mm}\left(12\right.$ " $\left.^{\prime}\right)$ |
| Paper length: | $105 \mathrm{~mm}\left(4.13^{\prime \prime}\right)$ | $315 \mathrm{~mm}\left(12.4^{\prime \prime}\right)$ |

The minimum paper length for all cassettes depends on the mounting position of the cassette as the feeding path of the paper is the longest in the last mounted cassette.

## Paper Length

Cassette 1
(first mounted)
Cassette 2
Cassette 3
(last mounted)
Paper weight
Cut sheets
Form sets of
minimum maximum
104 mm (4.09") 315 mm (12.4")
200 mm (7.87") 315 mm (12.4")
290 mm (11.42") 315 mm (12.4")
$70 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}(18 \mathrm{lb} /$ ream $) \quad 100 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}(26 \mathrm{lb} /$ ream $)$ $260 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}(69 \mathrm{lb} /$ ream $)$
action paper
Total thickness of set
0.35 mm (0.014")

Note: The first and last page of the form set must have a weight between 70 and $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$; the top- glued area must end 20 mm from the left and right margins.

Capacity
180 sheets of $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}(21 \mathrm{lb} /$ ream $)$ paper weight.

## Automatic Insertion with Cassette B1 and B2 (Option)

|  | B1 |  | B2 (using only as Cassette 1) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | minimum | maximum | minimum | maximum |
| Paper width: | 105 mm | 305 mm | 105 mm | 210 mm |
|  | $\left(4.13^{\prime \prime}\right)$ | $(12 ")$ | $\left(4.13^{\prime \prime}\right)$ | $(8.26$ ") |

The minimum paper length for cassette B1 depends on the mounting position of the cassette as the feeding path of the paper is the longest in the last mounted cassette. Cassette B2 can only be used on first mounted position.

| Paper Length | minimum | maximum | minimum | maximum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Cassette 1 (first mounted) | $\begin{aligned} & 105 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \left(4.13^{\prime \prime}\right) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 315 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \left(12.4^{\prime \prime}\right) \end{aligned}$ | 104 mm <br> (4.1") | $\begin{aligned} & 315 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \left(12.4^{\prime \prime}\right) \end{aligned}$ |
| Cassette 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 200 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \left(7.877^{\prime}\right) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 315 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \left(12.4^{\prime \prime}\right) \end{aligned}$ | --- | --- |
| Cassette 3 <br> (last mounted) | $\begin{aligned} & 290 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \left(11.42^{\prime \prime}\right) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 315 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \left(12.4^{\prime \prime}\right) \end{aligned}$ | --- | --- |
| Paper weight |  |  |  |  |
| Cut sheets | $100 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ | $150 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ | $150 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ | 250g/m ${ }^{2}$ |
| (26 lb/ream) (40 lb/ream) |  |  | (40 lb/ream) ( $67 \mathrm{lb} /$ ream) |  |

Appropriate direction of the fibre and flexibility for automatic feeding required.

| Form sets of <br> action paper | $300 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ <br> $(80 \mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{ream})$ | $300 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| weight of first/last page | $70 / 80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ | $(80 \mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{ream})$ |
|  | $(18 / 21 \mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{ream})$ | $70 / 80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ |
| Total thickness of set | 0.5 mm | $(18 / 21 \mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{ream})$ |
|  | $(0.02 \mathrm{l})$ | 0.5 mm |
|  |  | $(0.02 \mathrm{l})$ |

Note: The form sets for cassette B1 or B2 must not have a horizontal perforation or carbon paper; the top glued area must not have any margins as required for cassette $\mathbf{A}$.
 adhesive flap covered

- Capacity: 40 envelopes $250 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$


## PM IBM Coax SCS

Standard PM functions with parallel and serial interface; Emulation of IBM 3270 printer like 3287, 3268, 4214 or 3262 with intelligent PC-Host sharing.

## PM IBM Twinax SCS

Standard PM functions with parallel and serial interface; Emulation of IBM 4214/2, 5256, 5224 or 5225 printer with intelligent PC-Host sharing for IBM systems S/4, S/36, S/38 or AS/400.

## PM IBM Twinax IPDS

Standard PM functions with parallel and Twinax interface for IBM 3812 and IBM 4224 Emulation and system connection for AS/400, S/38 and S/36. Supported IPDS Towers: DC/1, PT/2, IM/1, OL/1, PS/1, DR/2, and BC/1.

## PM Ethernet

Standard PM function with serial interface, allows direct attachment to Ethernet LANs simultaneous operation of IPX/SPX under NOVEL Netware and TCP/ICP under BSD-, System V-, and AIX V. 3 UNIX Operating Systems is possible.

## PM Token Ring

Standard PM function with serial interface, allows direct attachment to Token Ring LANs simultaneous operation of IPX/SPX under NOVEL Netware and TCP/ICP under BSD-, System V-, and AIX V. 3 UNIX Operating Systems is possible.

## PM IGP

Standard PM functions with parallel and serial interface plus Printronix IGP 10/20/40 Emulation.

## PM S/P DAN

Standard PM functions with parallel and serial interface, DEC ${ }^{\circledR}$ ANSI
LA 324 / LA 424, IBM ${ }^{\oplus} 4207$ Proprinter XL24 (AGM), and EPSON ${ }^{\circledR}$
LQ 1060/2550 Emulation
Fonts: Draft, Roman, San Serif, Courier, Prestige, Script, OCR A, OCR B, and Data Block.
DEC Character Sets: G0 Character Set; User Pref. Character Sets
IBM and EPSON Character sets are the same like PM SER/PAR

Appendix A to G; for Printer:


## Appendix A System Interface Description

There are two system interfaces:

- one RS-232C serial interface
- one Parallel Centronics interface.

The interfaces can be operated in three different modes:

- serial interface active
- parallel interface active
- both interfaces active in shared mode

The following chapter gives an overview about interface characteristics, control signals, protocols, and cabling

Any change of the operation mode (Serial, Parallel or Shared) and of the size of the interface buffer is possible only when the interface buffer is completely empty of data.

Display messages: READY 4 ELQ, BUSY 4 ELQ, or LOCAL

## 1 Serial Interface RS-232C

## Interface Characteristics

| Signal Description |  | Pin No. | Direction |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| PG | Protective Ground | 1 | - |
| TXD | Transmit Data (from printer to host) | 2 | OUTPUT |
| RXD | Receive Data (from host to printer) | 3 | INPUT |
| RTS | Request to Send (printer is ready to send data) | 4 | OUTPUT |
| CTS | Clear to Send (host is ready to receive data) | 5 | INPUT |
| DSR | Data Set Ready | 6 | INPUT |
| SG | Signal Ground | 7 | - |
| DTR | Data Terminal Ready (printer is ready to receive - see also on the <br> following pages the data communication protocols for detail mean- <br> (ing) | 20 | OUTPUT |

*) with internal pull-up

- Transmission rate: 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, or 19200 baud
- Parity: even, odd, none, or ignore
- Word length: 7, or 8 bits
- Number of stop bits: In receive mode the printer accepts 1 , or 2 stop bits. The printer transmits always two stop bits.

Transmission Protocols:

- DTR - Ready/Busy
- XON/XOFF
- XON/XOFF + DTR


## 2 Transmission Protocols

### 2.1 DTR - Ready/Busy

(Supported RS-232C Protocols) - Full Duplex Local Connection

This protocol uses the following signal lines:

- Pin 1 Protective Ground (PG)

2 Transmit Data (TXD)
3 Receive Data (RXD) (with internal Pull-up) ${ }^{1)}$
5 Clear to Send (CTS) (with internal Pull-up) ${ }^{1)}$
7 Signal Ground (SG)
20 Data Terminal Ready (DTR)

The READY / BUSY DTR protocol uses the DATA TERMINAL READY line to control the transmission of data from the host to prevent a buffer overflow.

Note: The signal lines TXD ( $\operatorname{pin} 2$ ) and CTS (pin 5) are only necessary if the Device Status Report is required (see picture "Connection for Unidirectional Transfer Mode").

- Version 1 - Connection for Unidirectional Transfer Mode

- Version 2 - Connection full Duplex Transfer Mode

The READY / BUSY DTR protocol uses the DATA TERMINAL READY line to control the transmission of data from the host to prevent a buffer overflow.


## - Version 3 - PC Connection for full Duplex Transfer Mode

25 pin


9 pin

|  |
| :--- |
|  |
| 0 |
| 0 |
|  |
|  |
|  |

Note: Bridge between 7 and 8 on PC side means alternative RTS to CTS.

[^1]
## Additional Information

After Power-ON DTR is activated and the printer is ready to receive data.

DTR is deactivated when the interface buffer has only space left only for 256 more characters. Further incoming data will be stored until the interface buffer is full. All data sent in addition will get lost.

DTR is activated again if there is a free interface buffer space of 512 characters.

DTR is immediately deactivated, if local mode is entered.

It is activated again, if local mode is left and a minimum of 512 bytes interface buffer is available.

### 2.2 XON / XOFF

This protocol requires the signal lines.

- Pin 1 Protective Ground (PG) - Pin 5 Clear to Send (CTS)

2 Transmit Data (TXD)
3 Receive Data (RXD)
4 Request to Send (RTS)
6 Data Set Ready (DSR)
7 Signal Ground (SG)
20 Data Terminal Ready
(DTR)

## Standard Connection



For local connections RTS with CTS can be connected and likewise DTR with DSR.


Note: Bridge between 4 and 5 means alternative RTS to CTS
Cables with bridges at printer side ( 4 to 5 and 20 to 6 ) for older PMs (lower than PM-40A4) can also be used!

## Additional Information

After Power-ON DTR and RTS are activated and the printer is ready to receive data.

XOFF is sent, when the interface buffer has only space left for 256 more characters. XOFF is sent again, at a level of 128 characters buffer space. Further incoming data will be stored until the interface buffer is full. All data sent in addition will get lost.

XON is sent when the interface buffer provides space for a minimum of 512 characters.

XON/XOFF can only be sent successfully when CTS and (DSR) is at active state.

XOFF will be sent immediately if local mode is entered.
XON is sent again, if local mode is left and a minimum of 512 byte interface buffer is available.

## 3 Parallel Centronics ${ }^{\circledR}$ Interface

Interface Characteristics - Connector pin assignment / signal definition

|  | Signal Description | Pin No. | Return line Pin No. | Direction |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| STROBE | Control Signal from the Host. <br> Printer reads data line (Data 1 to Data 8) when going low. | 1 | 19 | Input |
| Data 1-8 | Data lines transfer the characters from the host to the printer. Data $8=$ most significant bit. | 2-9 | 20-27 | Input |
| $\overline{\text { ACKN }}$ | Acknowledge - Control signal from the printer. Logical 0 indicates that the printer has received a print/control character and is ready for the next data transfer. | 10 | 28 | Output |
| BUSY | Control signal from the printer. Logical 1 indicates that the printer is unable to receive any more data.") | 11 | 29 | Output |
| PE | Paper Empty - Control signal from the printer. This signal goes high when paper runs out, i.e. load upper or lower tractor, paper jam. | 12 | -- | Output |
| SELECT | Control signal from the printer. Always logical 1. Indicates that the printer is ON-LINE and ready. | 13 | -- | Output |
| LG | Logic Ground | 14 | -- |  |
| -- | not used | 15 | -- |  |
| LG | Logic Ground | 16 | -- |  |
| CG | Chassis Ground | 17 | -- |  |
| VCC | + 5 volt | 18 | -- |  |
| SG | Signal Ground | 19-30 | -- |  |
| INIT | Control signal from the host. Does not reset the printer but generates an acknowledge pulse (logical 1). | 31 | -- | Input |
| FAULT | Control signal from the printer. Always logical 1. If it goes to logical 0 the printer has been switched off. | 32 | -- | Output |
| LG | Logic Ground | 33 | -- |  |
| -- | not used | 34-36 | -- |  |

") Overlined signal names indicate that the signal is true when the signal level is low.
*) When the interface buffer is full except for the last character, BUSY will not be reset. BUSY will be reset when space is available again for least 256 characters in the interface buffer. While the printer is offline (Stop Mode) BUSY remains active until the printer enters the online state again.

- Maximal Transfer Speed

The maximum throughput for data transfer is 5,000 characters per second.

### 3.1 Transmission Protocol Description

After Power-ON the PE (Paper End) signal is set to logic 0 and the SELECT and ---FĀult signals are set to logic 1.

The printer is now ON-LINE and ready to receive data.

## Timing

The host sets a print/control character to the 8 data lines.

After a time delay of a minimum of $0.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$, the host sends a --- STTROBE pulse of a minimum of $0.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$. The print/control character is accepted into the interface buffer and the printer transmits a BUSY signal to the host. When the data byte is accepted into the interface buffer the printer transmits a BUSY signal and an -- ACckn pulse.

The -- ACKN pulse informs the host that the data has been received and that the printer is ready to receive new data.

If the interface buffer is full except for the last character the BUSY is not reset in order to stop the data transfer from the host. The BUSY signal is only reset if space is available in the interface buffer for a minimum of 256 characters.

When pressing [START/STOP] the BUSY remains high and no --̄ACKN is sent.

Provided a minimum of 256 characters are available in the interface buffer, pressing [START/STOP] will reset BUSY and transmit the ---ĀCKN pulse.

### 3.2 Timing Diagram


$\bar{A} \overline{C-K N}$
$0.5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$


## 4 Shared Operation

In shared operation the interface buffer capacity is reduced by 256 bytes
After Power-ON both the serial and the parallel interfaces are available for data transfer.

If a byte is first recognized by the serial interface the parallel interface is imme diately disabled by the BUSY signal. The serial interface is now active and will operate, using the installed protocols.

If a byte is first recognized by the parallel interface either the DTR signal of the serial interface is set to OFF or XOFF is sent, depending on the protocol.

If the serial interface starts to receive data while the parallel interface is active, it is possible to receive 256 bytes of serial data. Any additional serial data will be lost.

When the interface buffer is completely empty of serial data, and no new data has been received by the serial interface for more than 10 seconds, both interfaces are available for data transfer again.

When the interface buffer is completely empty of parallel data and no data has been received by the parallel interface for more than 10 seconds, the 256 bytes of serial data will be processed. Afterwards, both interfaces are available for data transfer again.

Equipped with the Peronality Module (PM SER/PAR), the Printer provides the following resident fonts:

Resident Fonts 10 CPI

## DATA





## LETTER GOTHIC

1234567890ß, \#+! " $\$ \%$ \&/() =? ; **
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAOÜ
abcdefghijk1mnopqrstuvwxyzäou

LETTER GOTHIC ITALIC
1234567890ß,\#+!" $\$ \$ \& /()=$ ? ; "*
ABCDEFGHIJK LMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAOO
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzäöu

COURIER

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAOU
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzäöü

## MICRO

1234567890 B, \# + ! " 小 $\$ \% /()=$ ? ; * *
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAZU
abcdefgnijklmnoparstuvwxyzäöü

ORATOR
1234567890ß, \#+!"」\$\%\&/()=?; ‘*
ABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAOU abcdefghi.Jklmnopqrstuvwxyzäöü

ORATOR-C
1234567890ß, \#+!"J\$\%\&/()=?;"\#
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAOOU
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRS TUVWXYZÄÖU

## ROMAN

1234567890 ß, \# + ! " $\$ \%$ / () =? ; *
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ̈OU
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzäöü

PRESTIGE
1234567890ß, 非 + " " \$ \% \& / ( ) =? ; ' * ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZÅU abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzäöii

## SCRIPT

$1234567890 \mathrm{~B}, \#+$ l $^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{J} \$ 88 /()=?$ : $^{\prime}$ * ABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUUWXYZAOU abcdefghijhRmnopqrstuvwxyzäöü

## OCR-A


ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAOO abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzäöü

OCR-B
1234567890ß,\#+!'J\$\%\&/()=?:'* ABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZAOU abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzäöü

 abcde fghij

COURIRR LQ, 20 CPI O1234557899RCORI

COURIER LQ, 18 CPI 0123456789aRCDBP

COURIER LR, 17.1 CPI 01234567898BCDER

COURIER LQ, 15 CPI 0123456789ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, 14.4 CPI 0123456789ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, 12 CPI 0123456789ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, 10 CPI 0123456789ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, proport. 0123456789 ABCDEF

COURIER outline
 ABCDI


COURIER shadow
1234807390



COURIER outline + shadow




COURIER
4xHeight $4 x W i d t h$ outline

## 1.3 $\mathfrak{A B C a b c ~}$

COURIER
4xHeight $4 x W i d t h$ shadow

## 123АЗСabc

COURIER
4xHeight $4 \times W i d t h$ shadow + outline

## 123ABCabo

DATA, 10 CPI
W123456789ABCDEF

DATA, 1x HEIGHT 2x WIDTH


DATA, 1 X HEIGHT $3 x$ WIDTH


DATA, 1x HEIGHT 4X WIDTH


DATA, 1x HEIGHT 4x WIDTH, BOLD
$\square-\mathrm{L}$

DATA, 2x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH 0123455789 ACCDEF

DATA, 3x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH


DATA, 4x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH


DATA, 4x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH, BOLD


DATA, 2x HEIGHT 2x WIDTH 123456799 ABCDFF

DATA, 3x HEIGHT 3x WIDTH
D1234ABCDEF DATA, 4x HEIGHT 4x WIDTH
01234ABC DATA, 4x HEIGHT 4x WIDTH, BOLD

## 01234 ABC

COURIER LQ, 10 CPI
0123456789 ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, 1x HEIGHT 2x WIDTH
O123456789ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, 1x HEIGHT 3x WIDTH


COURIER LQ, 1x HEIGHT 4x WIDTH


COURIER LQ, 1x HEIGHT 4x WIDTH, BOLD


COURIER LQ, 2x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH 0123456789ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, 3x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH
$0123456789880 \times F$

COURIER LQ, 4x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH O123456789RPODR

COURIER LQ, 4X HEIGHT 1X WIDTH, BOLD О2ม\%

COURIER LQ, 2x HEIGHT 2x WIDTH 0123456789 ABCDEF

COURIER LQ, 3x HEIGHT 3x WIDTH

## $01234 A B C D E F$

COURIER LQ, 4X HEIGHT 4X WIDTH

## 01234ABC

COURIER LQ, 4X HEIGHT 4X WIDTH, BOLD

## DATABLOCK 1x HEIGHT 1x WIDTH



DATABLOCK 2x HEIGHT 2x WIDTH



DATABLOCK 3x HEIGHT $3 x$ WIDTH BOLD


DATA LARGE § ! "\#\$\%\&'() ノ0123456789 ? §ABCDEFGHI OPQRSTUUWXY
' abcdefghi opqrstuuwxy Çüéääáçeë



1. Basis Code Table for National Versions (GP-Mode)

NV-1.0, NV-2.3, NV-2.5, NV-2.6, NV-2.8

|  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |  | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 |  | 0 | $N V$ | P | NV | p |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 1 | $!$ | 1 | A | Q | a | q |  | $\diamond$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 2 | $\prime$ | 2 | B | R | b | r |  | $\%$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 3 | $N V$ | 3 | C | S | c | s |  | $\sim$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 4 | $\$$ | 4 | D | T | d | t |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 5 | $\%$ | 5 | E | U | e | u |  | $N V$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 6 | $\&$ | 6 | F | V | f | v |  | $N V$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 7 | , | 7 | G | W | g | w |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 8 | C | 8 | H | X | h | x |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| 9 | l | 9 | l | Y | i | y |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| A | $*$ | $:$ | J | Z | j | z |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| B | + | $;$ | K | $N V$ | k | $N V$ |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| C | $\cdot$ | $<$ | L | $N V$ | l | $N V$ |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| D | - | $=$ | M | $N V$ | m | $N V$ |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| E | . | $>$ | N | $N V$ | n | $N V$ |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |
| F | $/$ | $?$ | O | - | o |  |  | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ | $\$$ |

[^2]1.1 National Version NV-1.0

|  | Zeichensatz Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 23 | 40 | 5B | 5C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7C | 7D | 7E | A5 | A6 |
| 1: D | \# | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ | - | ä | Ö | ü | B | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{ }$ | * |
| 2: GB | £ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | ~ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | * |
| 3: F | £ | à | - | Ç | § | $\wedge$ | - | é | ù | è | " | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{ }$ | * |
| 4: E | £ | @ | [ | N | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | ñ | \} | ~ | $\stackrel{\wedge}{ }$ | * |
| 5: 1 | £ | § | - | Ç | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | I | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | * |
| 6: S | \# | É | Ä | Ö | Å | $\wedge$ | é | ä | O | å | ~ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{ }$ | * |
| 7: DK | £ | @ | Æ | $\varnothing$ | Å | $\wedge$ | - | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ~ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{ }$ | * |
| 8: P | £ | @ | Ã | Ç | Õ | $\wedge$ | - | ã | Ç | õ | ~ | $\stackrel{\wedge}{ }$ | * |
| 9: YU | £ | Ž | Ć | Č | Š | $\wedge$ | ž | ć | č | S' | ~ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{ }$ | * |
| 10: USA | \# | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | ~ | $\underline{\text { CR }}$ | CR |
| 11: SIS | £ | @ | Ä | Ö | A | $\wedge$ | - | ä | ö | å | $\sim$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | * |


|  | Zeichensatz Code（Hex） |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 23 | 40 | 5B | 5C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7C | 7D | 7E | A5 | A6 |
| 1：D | \＃ | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ | － | ä | ö | ü | B | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | ＊ |
| 2：GB | £ | ＠ | ［ | 1 | ］ | $\wedge$ | － | \｛ | ｜ | \} | $\sim$ | ® | ＊ |
| 3：F1 | £ | à | 。 | ç | § | $\wedge$ | － | é | ù | è | ＂ | ® | ＊ |
| 4：E | £ | ＠ | ［ | N | ］ | $\wedge$ | － | \｛ | ñ | \} | ～ | ® | ＊ |
| 5： 1 | £ | § | 。 | Ç | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | ì | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | ＊ |
| 6：S | \＃ | É | Ä | Ö | Å | Ü | é | ä | ӧ | å | ü | ® | ＊ |
| 7：DK2 | £ | ＠ | F | $\varnothing$ | A | $\wedge$ | － | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ～ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | $\stackrel{*}{*}$ |
| 8：SW2 | £ | ｜ | ä | O | ü | $\wedge$ | \＃ | Ç | é | è | à | 乞 | $\stackrel{*}{-}$ |
| 9：F2 | â | à | ê | Ç | î | $\wedge$ | ô | é | ù | è | û | 乞 | $\stackrel{\text {＊}}{ }$ |
| 10：USA | \＃ | ＠ | ［ | 1 | ］ | $\wedge$ | － | \｛ | ｜ | \} | ～ | $\underline{C R}$ | CR |
| 11：DK1 | \＃ | É | F | $\varnothing$ | Å | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | ＊ |

1．3 National Version NV－2．5

|  | Zeichensatz Code（Hex） |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 23 | 40 | 5B | 5C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7C | 7D | 7E | A5 | A6 |
| 1：D | \＃ | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ | － | ä | Ö | ü | B | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | $\stackrel{\text {＊}}{ }$ |
| 2：GB | £ | ＠ | ［ | 1 | ］ | $\wedge$ | － | \｛ | 1 | \} | $\sim$ | ® | $\stackrel{*}{-}$ |
| 3：F | £ | à | 。 | Ç | § | $\wedge$ | \＃ | é | ù | è | ＂ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{ }$ | $\stackrel{\text {＊}}{ }$ |
| 4：E | £ | ＠ | ［ | N | ］ | $\wedge$ | － | \｛ | n | \} | $\sim$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | $\stackrel{*}{-}$ |
| 5： 1 | £ | § | － | ç | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | ì | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | ＊ |
| 6：S | £ | \＄ | Ä | Ö | Å | $\wedge$ | － | ä | Ö | å | ü | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | ＊ |
| 7：DK | £ | ＠ | た | $\varnothing$ | Å | $\wedge$ | － | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ＂ | ® | ＊ |
| 8：P | £ | ＠ | Ã | Ç | Õ | $\wedge$ | － | ã | Ç | õ | ～ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{ }$ | $\stackrel{*}{*}$ |
| 9：SW2 | £ | ｜ | ä | Ö | ü | $\wedge$ | \＃ | Ç | é | è | à | ® | ＊ |
| 10：USA | \＃ | ＠ | ［ | 1 | ］ | $\wedge$ |  | \｛ | ｜ | \} | $\sim$ | $\underline{C R}$ | CR |
| 11：SF | £ | ＠ | Ä | Ö | Å | $\wedge$ |  | ä | Ö | a | ＂ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | $\stackrel{\text {＊}}{ }$ |


|  | 23 | Zeichensatz Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 40 | 5B | 5C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7C | 7D | 7E | A5 | A6 |
| 1: D | \# | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ | - | ä | O | ü | B | $\stackrel{ }{ }$ ¢ | * |
| 2: GB | £ | @ | [ | 1 | 1 | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | ~ | ® | * |
| 3: F | £ | à | - | Ç | § | $\wedge$ | - | é | ù | è | " | ® | * |
| 4: E | £ | @ | [ | N | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | ñ | \} | ~ | ® | * |
| 5: I | £ | § | - | Ç | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | ì | $\stackrel{ }{\wedge}$ | * |
| 6: S | \# | É | Ä | Ö | Å | $\wedge$ | é | ä | Ö | å | $\sim$ | $\stackrel{ }{ }$ ¢ | $\stackrel{ }{*}$ |
| 7: DK | £ | @ | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | Å | $\wedge$ | - | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | $\sim$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | $\stackrel{\text { * }}{ }$ |
| 8: P | £ | @ | Ã | Ç | Õ | $\wedge$ | - | ã | ç | õ | ~ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | * |
| 9: SW2 | \# | § | à | è | é | $\wedge$ | ù | ä | Ö | ü | ç | ® | $\stackrel{*}{-}$ |
| 10: USA | \# | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ | CR | CR |
| 11: SIS | \# | @ | Ä | Ö | Å | $\wedge$ |  | ä | ठ̈ | å | ~ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | * |

1.5 National Version NV-2.8

|  | Zeichensatz Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 23 | 40 | 5B | 5C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7C | 7D | 7E | A5 | A6 |
| 1: D | \# | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ | - | ä | Ö | ü | B | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | $\stackrel{\text { * }}{ }$ |
| 2: GB | £ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ | ® | $\stackrel{*}{-}$ |
| 3: F | £ | à | 。 | Ç | § | $\wedge$ | \# | é | ù | è | " | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | * |
| 4: E | £ | @ | [ | N | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | ñ | \} | $\sim$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\wedge}$ | $\stackrel{*}{-}$ |
| 5: 1 | £ | § | - | Ç | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | ì | ® | * |
| 6: S | £ | § | Ä | Ö | Å | $\wedge$ | - | ä | Ö | å | ü | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | * |
| 7: DK | £ | @ | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | A | $\wedge$ | - | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | " | ® | * |
| 8: P | £ | @ | Ã | Ç | Õ | $\wedge$ | - | ã | Ç | õ | ~ | ® | $\stackrel{*}{*}$ |
| 9: SW2 | £ | " | ä | Ö | ü | $\wedge$ | - | ç | é | è | à | ® | * |
| 10: USA | \# | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ | CR | CR |
| 11: SF | £ | @ | Ä | Ö | Å | $\wedge$ |  | ä | Ö | a | " | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2}$ | $\stackrel{\text { * }}{ }$ |


|  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 |  | 0 | @ | P | - | p | $\diamond$ | 。 | À | Đ | à | Ő |
| 1 | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | i | $\pm$ | Á | N | á | ก |
| 2 | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | ¢ | 2 | Â | Ò | â | ò |
| 3 | \# | 3 | C | S | C | S | £ | 3 | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | \$ | 4 | D | T | d | t | a | ' | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | \% | 5 | E | U | e | u | $\ddagger$ | $\mu$ | Å | Õ | å | õ |
| 6 | \& | 6 | F | V | f | V | 1 | 9 | $\ldots$ | Ö | æ | Ö |
| 7 | , | 7 | G | W | g | w | § | $\bullet$ | Ç | $\times$ | Ç | $\div$ |
| 8 | $($ | 8 | H | X | h | X | $\cdots$ | , | Ė | $\varnothing$ | è | $\varnothing$ |
| 9 | ) | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y | ( | 1 | É | Ù | é | ù |
| A | * | : | J | Z | j | z | $\underline{ }$ | $\bigcirc$ | É | Ú | ê | ú |
| B | + | ; | K | [ | k | \{ | " | " | Ë | Û | ё | û |
| C | , | < | L | 1 | 1 | \| | $\neg$ | 1/4 | Ì | Ü | ì | ü |
| D | - | = | M | ] | m | \} | - | 1/2 | Í | Ý | í | y |
| E | . | > | N | $\wedge$ | n | $\sim$ | (8) | $3 / 4$ | Î | P | î | p |
| F | 1 | ? | O | - | 0 |  | - | ¿ | Ï | B | ï | y |

2.2 Code Table ISO 8859-15

|  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 |  | 0 | @ | P | - | p | $\diamond$ | 。 | À | Đ | à | Ő |
| 1 | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | i | $\pm$ | Á | Ñ | á | ñ |
| 2 | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | ¢ | 2 | Â | Ò | â | ò |
| 3 | \# | 3 | C | S | C | S | £ | 3 | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | \$ | 4 | D | T | d | t | € | Ž | Ä | Ô | ä | Ô |
| 5 | \% | 5 | E | U | e | u | ¥ | $\mu$ | Å |  | å | õ |
| 6 | \& | 6 | F | V | f | V | Š | ๆ | $\ldots$ | Ö | æ | ӧ |
| 7 | , | 7 | G | W | g | w | § | $\bullet$ | Ç | $\times$ | Ç | $\div$ |
| 8 | ( | 8 | H | X | h | X | š | ž | Ė | $\varnothing$ | è | $\varnothing$ |
| 9 | ) | 9 | 1 | Y | 1 | y | © | 1 | É | Ù | é | ù |
| A | * | : | J | Z | j | Z | a | 응 | E | Ú | ê | ú |
| B | + | ; | K | [ | k | \{ | " | " | Ë | Û | ё | û |
| C | , | < | L | 1 | 1 | \| | ᄀ | CE | Ì | Ü | 1 | ü |
| D | - | = | M | 1 | m | \} | - | œ | Í | Ý | í | ý |
| E | . | $>$ | N | $\wedge$ | n | ~ | ( ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | $\ddot{Y}$ | Î | P | ̂̂ | p |
| F | 1 | ? | O | - | 0 |  | - | ¿ | İ | B | ï | ÿ |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\varnothing$ | － | SP | 0 | ＠ | P | － | p | Ç | É | á | ！ | ． | J | $\alpha$ | $\equiv$ |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ | 4 | $!$ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | æ | í | ＂ | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 | （1） | $\downarrow$ | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | た | ó | \＃ | 0 | H | $\Gamma$ | $\geq$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | ！！ | \＃ | 3 | C | S | C | S | â | ô | ú | ＊ | ／ | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 | － | 9 | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | Ö | ñ | 1 | ） | B | $\Sigma$ | 1 |
| 5 | \％ | § | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | $\tilde{N}$ | I | 3 | ？ | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 | $\pm$ | － | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | v | å | û | $\underline{\square}$ | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | － | $\underline{1}$ | ， | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | D | K | 0 | T | $\approx$ |
| 8 | － | $\uparrow$ | （ | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | ÿ | ¿ | ＠ | 9 | P | $\Phi$ | $\bigcirc$ |
| 9 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ） | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y | ë | Ö | г | ＜ | 6 | － | $\Theta$ | ． |
| A | 0 | $\rightarrow$ | ＊ | ： | J | Z | j | Z | è | Ü | $\neg$ | 5 | $=$ | ＋ | $\Omega$ | ． |
| B | $0^{x}$ | $\leftarrow$ | ＋ | ， | K | ［ | k | \｛ | Ï | ¢ | $1 / 2$ | 7 | ； | \＄ | $\delta$ | $\checkmark$ |
| C | ¢ | ᄂ | ， | ＜ | L | 1 | 1 | ｜ | $\hat{\imath}$ | £ | $1 / 4$ | 8 | ： | （ | $\infty$ | n |
| D | J | $\leftrightarrow$ | － | ＝ | M | ］ | m | \} | ì | ¥ | i | E | 4 | \％ | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E | 月 | $\wedge$ | ． | ＞ | N | $\wedge$ | n | ～ | Ä | $\mathrm{Pt}^{\text {t }}$ | ＂ | A | ＞ | ＇ | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F | \％ | $\checkmark$ | 1 | ？ | 0 | － | 0 |  | A | $f$ | ＂ | ， | N | \＆ | $\cap$ | SP |

Applicable for Code Table IBM Set 1 and 2
$4 \quad$ Code Table IBM Set 1
National Version＝USA

|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | NUL |  | SP | 0 | ＠ | P | － | p | NUL |  | á | ！ | ． | J | $\alpha$ | 三 |
| 1 |  | DC1 | ！ | 1 | A | Q | a | q |  | DC1 | í | ＂ | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 |  | DC2 | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r |  | DC2 | ó | \＃ | 0 | H | 「 | $\geq$ |
| 3 |  | DC3 | \＃ | 3 | C | S | C | S |  | DC3 | ú | ＊ | ／ | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 |  | DC4 | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t |  | DC4 | $\tilde{n}$ | 1 | ） | B | $\Sigma$ | $\uparrow$ |
| 5 |  |  | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u |  |  | $\tilde{N}$ | 1 | 3 | $?$ | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 |  |  | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | v |  |  | － | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | BEL |  | ， | 7 | G | W | g | w | BEL |  | $\bigcirc$ | D | K | 0 | T | $\approx$ |
| 8 | BS | CAN | （ | 8 | H | X | h | X | BS | Can | ¿ | ＠ | 9 | P | $\Phi$ | － |
| 9 | HT |  | ） | 9 | 1 | Y | 1 | y | HT |  | г | ＜ | 6 | － | $\Theta$ | ． |
| A | LF |  | ＊ | ： | J | Z | j | z | LF |  | ᄀ | 5 | $=$ | ＋ | $\Omega$ | ． |
| B | VT | ESC | ＋ | ； | K | ［ | k | \｛ | VT | ESC | 1／2 | 7 | ； | \＄ | б | $\checkmark$ |
| C | FF |  | ， | ＜ | L | 1 | 1 | $\dagger$ | FF |  | 1／4 | 8 | ： | （ | $\infty$ | n |
| D | CR |  | － | $=$ | M | ］ | m | \} | CR |  | i | E | 4 | \％ | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E | SO |  | ． | ＞ | N | $\wedge$ | n | $\sim$ | So |  | ＂ | A | ＞ | ＇ | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F | SI |  | 1 | $?$ | 0 | － | 0 |  | SI |  | ＂ | ， | N | \＆ | $\cap$ | SP |


|  | 2 | Character Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 24 | 40 | 5B | 5C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7C | 7D | 7E |
| 1: USA | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ |
| 2: FRANCE | \# | \$ | à | - | Ç | § | $\wedge$ |  | é | ù | è | . |
| 3: GERMANY | \# | \$ | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ |  | ä | Ö | ü | B |
| 4: U.K. | £ | \$ | @ | [ | $\$ & ] & $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ |  |  |
| 5: DENMARK | \# | \$ | @ | F | $\varnothing$ | Å | $\wedge$ | - | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | $\sim$ |
| 6: SWEDEN | \# | a | É | Ä | Ö | Å | Ü | é | ä | Ö | å | ü |
| 7: ITALY | \# | \$ | @ | - | 1 | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | ì |
| 8: SPAIN | Pt | \$ | @ | i | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | $\wedge$ | - | . | ñ | \} | $\sim$ |
| 9: JAPAN | \# | \$ | @ | [ | $¥$ | ] | $\wedge$ | $\cdot$ | \{ | 1 | \} | ~ |
| 10: NORWAY | \# | a | É | F | $\varnothing$ | Å | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 11: DENMARK 2 | \# | \$ | É | た | $\varnothing$ | Å | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 12: SPAIN 2 | \# | \$ | á | i | N | ¿ | é | - | í | ñ | ó | ú |
| 13: LATIN AM. | \# | \$ | á | 1 | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | é | Ü | í | ñ | ó | ú |
| 14: TURKEY | \# | ī | İ | Ç | Ö | Ş | Ü | ğ | Ç | Ö | Ş | ü |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | NUL |  | SP | 0 | @ | P | - | p | Ç | É | á | ! | . | J | $\alpha$ | 三 |
| 1 |  | DC1 | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | æ | í | " | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 |  | DC2 | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | E | ó | \# | 0 | H | $\Gamma$ | $\geq$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | DC3 | \# | 3 | C | S | c | s | â | ô | ú | * | / | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 | - | DC4 | \$ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | Ö | ñ | 1 | ) | B | $\Sigma$ | F |
| 5 | 2 | § | \% | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | $\tilde{N}$ | 1 | 3 | ? | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 | ¢ |  | \& | 6 | F | V | f | v | å | û | a | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | BEL |  | , | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | D | K | 0 | T | ~ |
| 8 | BS | can | ( | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | ÿ | ¿ | @ | 9 | P | Ф | - |
| 9 | HT |  | ) | 9 | 1 | Y | 1 | y | ë | Ö | r | $<$ | 6 | - | $\Theta$ |  |
| A | LF |  | * | : | J | Z | j | Z | è | Ü | ᄀ | 5 | = | + | $\Omega$ | . |
| B | VT | ESC | + | ; | K | [ | k | \{ | ï | ¢ | 1/2 | 7 | ; | \$ | ठ | $\checkmark$ |
| C | FF |  | , | < | L | 1 | 1 | 1 | ̂̀ | £ | 1/4 | 8 | : | ( | $\infty$ | n |
| D | CR |  | - | $=$ | M | ] | m | \} | ì | ¥ | i | E | 4 | \% | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E | SO |  | . | > | N | $\wedge$ | n | ~ | Ä | $\mathrm{Pt}_{\mathrm{t}}$ | " | A | $>$ | ' | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F | SI |  | / | ? | 0 | - | 0 |  | A | $f$ | " | , | N | \& | $\cap$ | $\bigcirc$ |

### 5.1 National Version IBM Set 2

|  | Character Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 23 | 24 | 40 | 5B | 5 C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7 C | 7D | 7E | 9B | 9 D |
| 1:USA | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | \| | \} | ~ | ¢ | $\ddagger$ |
| 2: FRANCE | \# | \$ | à | - | ç | § | $\wedge$ | - | é | ù | è | - | ¢ | $¥$ |
| 3: GERMANY | \# | \$ | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ |  | ä | ö | ü | B | ¢ | ¥ |
| 4: U.K. | £ | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | . | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ | ¢ | ¥ |
| 5: DENMARK | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | \| | \} | ~ | $\varnothing$ | $\varnothing$ |
| 6: SWEDEN | \# | a | É | Ä | Ö | A | Ü | é | ä | ö | å | ü | ¢ | $\ddagger$ |
| 7: ITALY | \# | \$ | @ | - | 1 | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | ì | ¢ | ¥ |
| 8: SPAIN | $\mathrm{Pt}^{\text {t }}$ | \$ | @ | i | N | ¿ | $\wedge$ | - | - | ñ | \} | ~ | ¢ | $¥$ |
| 9: Japan | \# | \$ | @ | [ | ¥ | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | I | \} | $\sim$ | ¢ | ¥ |
| 10: NORWAY | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | I | \} | ~ | $\varnothing$ | $\varnothing$ |
| 11: DEMARK 2 | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | $\cdot$ | \{ | \| | \} | ~ | $\bigcirc$ | $\varnothing$ |
| 12: SPAIN 2 | \# | \$ | á | i | N | i | é |  | í | ñ | ó | ú | ¢ | $\ddagger$ |
| 13: LATIN AM. | \# | \$ | á | i | N | i | é | Ü | í | ñ | ó | ú | ¢ | $¥$ |
| 14: TURKEY | \# | i | İ | Ç | Ö | Ş | Ü | ğ | ¢ | ö | ş | ü | ¢ | $¥$ |

## $6 \quad$ Code Table IBM IBM Code Page

Code Page
1: Code Page 437
2: Code Page 850

3: Code Page 858

4: Code Page 860
5: Code Page 863
6: Code Page 865

Countries

USA
Germany, U.K., Denmark, Sweden, Italy, Spain, Japan, Latin Am., Turkey

Germany, U.K., Denmark, Sweden, Italy, Spain, Japan, Latin Am., Turkey inc. EURO Symbol $€$

## Portugal

France

Norway

|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\varnothing$ | － | SP | 0 | ＠ | P | － | p | Ç | É | á | ！ | ． | J | $\alpha$ | 三 |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ | 4 | ！ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | æ | í | ＂ | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | 的 | ó | \＃ | 0 | H | $\Gamma$ | $\geq$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | ！！ | \＃ | 3 | C | S | C | S | â | ô | ú | ＊ | ／ | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 | $\checkmark$ | ๆ | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | Ö | n | 1 | ） | B | $\Sigma$ | $\bigcirc$ |
| 5 | 20 | § | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | $\tilde{N}$ | 1 | 3 | ？ | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 | $\pm$ | － | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | v | å | û | a | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | $\bullet$ | $\underline{1}$ | ， | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | D | K | 0 | T | $\approx$ |
| 8 | － | $\dagger$ | （ | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | ÿ | ¿ | ＠ | 9 | P | $\Phi$ | － |
| 9 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ） | 9 | 1 | Y | 1 | y | ë | Ö | － | ＜ | 6 | － | $\Theta$ | ． |
| A | 0 | $\rightarrow$ | ＊ | ： | J | Z | j | Z | è | Ü | $\neg$ | 5 | $=$ | ＋ | $\Omega$ | ． |
| B | $0^{7}$ | $\leftarrow$ | ＋ | ； | K | ［ | k | \｛ | ï | ¢ | 1／2 | 7 | ； | \＄ | ठ | $\checkmark$ |
| C | 아 | ᄂ | ＇ | ＜ | L | 1 | 1 | ｜ | $\hat{\imath}$ | £ | 1／4 | 8 | ： | （ | $\infty$ | n |
| D | J | $\leftrightarrow$ | － | $=$ | M | ］ | m | \} | 1 | $¥$ | i | E | 4 | \％ | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E | A | $\wedge$ |  | ＞ | N | $\wedge$ | n | $\sim$ | Ä | Pt | ＂ | A | $>$ | ＇ | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F | \％ | $\checkmark$ | 1 | ？ | O | － | 0 |  | Å | $f$ | ＂ | ， | N | \＆ | $\cap$ | $S P$ |

## 6．2 IBM Code Page 850

|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\varnothing$ | － | SP | 0 | ＠ | P | － | p | Ç | É | á | ！ | ． | ठ | Ó | － |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ | 4 | ！ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | $æ$ | í | ＂ | 2 | Đ | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 | © | $\downarrow$ | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | モ | ó | \＃ | 0 | E | Ô | $=$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | ！！ | \＃ | 3 | C | S | C | S | â | Ô | ú | ＊ | ／ | Ë | Ò | $3 / 4$ |
| 4 | － | ๆ | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | Ö | ñ | 1 | ） | Ė | Õ | I |
| 5 | 9 | § | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | $\tilde{N}$ | Á | 3 | i | Õ | § |
| 6 | 4 | － | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | v | å | û | － | Â | ã | 1 | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | $\bullet$ | $\underline{1}$ | ， | 7 | G | W | g | W | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | À | Ã | Î | p | ， |
| 8 | － | $\uparrow$ | （ | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | ÿ | ¿ | © | 9 | Ï | P |  |
| 9 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ） | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y | ë | Ö | （8） | ＜ | 6 | － | Ú | ${ }^{*}$ |
| A | 0 | $\rightarrow$ | ＊ | ： | $J$ | Z | j | Z | è | Ü | $\neg$ | 5 | $=$ | ＋ | Û | － |
| B | ${ }^{*}$ | $\leftarrow$ | ＋ | ； | K | ［ | k | \｛ | İ | $\varnothing$ | 1／2 | 7 | ； | \＄ | Ù | 1 |
| C | 아 | ᄂ | ， | ＜ | L | 1 | 1 | ｜ | ̂̂ | £ | 1／4 | 8 | ： | （ | ý | 3 |
| D | d | $\leftrightarrow$ | － | ＝ | M | ］ | m | \} | I | $\varnothing$ | i | ¢ | 4 | ｜ | Ý | 2 |
| E | 月 | $\wedge$ |  | ＞ | N | $\wedge$ | n | $\sim$ | Ä | $\times$ | ＂ | ¥ | ＞ | ì | － | $\square$ |
| F | \％ | $\checkmark$ | 1 | ？ | O | － | 0 |  | Å | $f$ | ＂ | ， | a | \＆ | ＇ | $\bigcirc$ |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\varnothing$ | － | SP | 0 | ＠ | P | － | p | Ç | É | á | ！ |  | ð | Ó | － |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ | 4 | ！ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | $æ$ | í | ＂ | 2 | Đ | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 | $\bigcirc$ | 1 | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | Æ | ó | \＃ | 0 | É | Ô | $=$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | ！！ | \＃ | 3 | C | S | C | S | â | O | ú | ＊ | ／ | Ë | Ò | $3 / 4$ |
| 4 | $\checkmark$ | II | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | Ö | ñ | 1 | ） | Ė | õ | II |
| 5 | 2 | § | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | $\tilde{N}$ | Á | 3 | E | Õ | § |
| 6 | 4 | － | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | V | å | û | a | Â | ã | İ | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | $\bullet$ | $\underline{1}$ | ， | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | À | Ã | Î | p |  |
| 8 | － | $\uparrow$ | （ | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | ÿ | ¿ | © | 9 | İ | P |  |
| 9 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ） | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y | ë | Ö | （8） | ＜ | 6 | － | Ú | ＊ |
| A | 0 | $\rightarrow$ | ＊ | ： | J | Z | j | Z | è | Ü | ᄀ | 5 | $=$ | ＋ | Û | 。 |
| B | $0^{x}$ | $\leftarrow$ | ＋ | ； | K | ［ | k | \｛ | ï | $\varnothing$ | 1／2 | 7 | ； | \＄ | Ù | 1 |
| C | 안 | $\llcorner$ | ＇ | ＜ | L | 1 | 1 | ｜ | î | £ | 1／4 | 8 | ： | 1 | ý | 3 |
| D | d | $\leftrightarrow$ | － | $=$ | M | ］ | m | \} | ì | $\varnothing$ | i | ¢ | 4 | ｜ | Ý | 2 |
| E | A | $\wedge$ |  | ＞ | N | $\wedge$ | n | ～ | Ä | $\times$ | ＂ | $¥$ | ＞ | ì | － | $\square$ |
| F | \％ | $\checkmark$ | 1 | ？ | O | － | 0 |  | A | $f$ | ＂ | ， | a | \＆ | ＇ | SP |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\varnothing$ | － | SP | 0 | ＠ | P |  | p | Ç | É | á | ！ | ． | J | $\alpha$ | 三 |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ | 4 | ！ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | À | í | ＂ | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 | © | $\dagger$ | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | Ė | ó | \＃ | 0 | H | $\Gamma$ | $\geq$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | ！！ | \＃ | 3 | C | S | c | S | â | ô | ú | ＊ | ／ | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 | $\checkmark$ | 9 | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ã | õ | ñ | 1 | ） | B | $\Sigma$ | 1 |
| 5 | 9 | § | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | $\tilde{N}$ | 1 | 3 | ？ | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 | 4 | － | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | v | Á | Ú | a | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | $\bullet$ | $\underline{1}$ | ， | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | D | K | 0 | T | $\approx$ |
| 8 | － | $\uparrow$ | $($ | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | Ì | ¿ | ＠ | 9 | P | $\Phi$ | － |
| 9 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ） | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y | E | Õ | Ò | $<$ | 6 | － | $\Theta$ |  |
| A | 0 | $\rightarrow$ | ＊ | ： | J | Z | j | z | è | Ü | ᄀ | 5 | $=$ | ＋ | $\Omega$ | ． |
| B | $0^{*}$ | $\leftarrow$ | ＋ | ； | K | ［ | k | \｛ | ï | ¢ | 1／2 | 7 | ； | \＄ | ठ | $\sqrt{ }$ |
| C | ¢ | $\llcorner$ | ＇ | ＜ | L | 1 | 1 | 1 | î | £ | 1／4 | 8 | ： | （ | $\infty$ | n |
| D | d | $\leftrightarrow$ | － | ＝ | M | ］ | m | \} | ì | Ù | i | E | 4 | \％ | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E | 月 | $\wedge$ | ． | ＞ | N | $\wedge$ | n | ～ | Ã | $\mathrm{Pt}^{\text {t }}$ | ＂ | A | $>$ | ＇ | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F | \％ | $\checkmark$ | 1 | ？ | O | － | 0 |  | Å | Ó | ＂ | ， | N | \＆ | $\cap$ | SP |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\varnothing$ | － | SP | 0 | ＠ | P | － | p | Ç | É | 1 | ！ |  | J | $\alpha$ | $\equiv$ |
| 1 | © | 4 | ！ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | Ė | ＇ | ＂ | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 | © | $\dagger$ | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | Ê | ó | \＃ | 0 | H | $\Gamma$ | $\geq$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | ！！ | \＃ | 3 | C | S | C | S | â | ô | ú | ＊ | 1 | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 | － | ๆ | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t | Â | Ë | ${ }^{*}$ | 1 | ） | B | $\Sigma$ | 1 |
| 5 | 9 | § | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | İ | ， | I | 3 | ？ | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 | 4 | － | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | V | I | û | 3 | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | $\bullet$ | $\underline{1}$ | $\cdots$ | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | － | D | K | 0 | T | $\approx$ |
| 8 | － | $\dagger$ | （ | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | a | Î | ＠ | 9 | P | $\Phi$ | － |
| 9 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ） | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y | ё | Ô | г | ＜ | 6 | － | $\Theta$ |  |
| A | 0 | $\rightarrow$ | ＊ | ： | J | Z | j | Z | è | Ü | ᄀ | 5 | $=$ | ＋ | $\Omega$ |  |
| B | $0^{*}$ | $\leftarrow$ | ＋ | ； | K | ［ | k | \｛ | ì | ¢ | 1／2 | 7 | ； | \＄ | ठ | $\checkmark$ |
| C | 아 | $\llcorner$ | ＇ | $<$ | L | 1 | 1 | ｜ | ̂̂ | £ | 1／4 | 8 | ： | （ | $\infty$ | n |
| D | d | $\leftrightarrow$ | － | ＝ | M | ］ | m | \} | ＝ | Ù | $3 / 4$ | E | 4 | \％ | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E | 月 | $\wedge$ |  | ＞ | N | $\wedge$ | n | ～ | À | Û | ＂ | A | ＞ | ＇ | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F | \％ | $\checkmark$ | 1 | ？ | 0 | － | 0 |  | § | $f$ | ＂ | ， | N | \＆ | $\cap$ | SP |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | $F$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\varnothing$ | － | SP | 0 | ＠ | P |  | p | Ç | É | á | ！ | ． | J | $\alpha$ | 三 |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ | 4 | ！ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | æ | í | ＂ | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 | © | $\downarrow$ | ＂ | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | Æ | ó | \＃ | 0 | H | $\Gamma$ | $\geq$ |
| 3 | $\checkmark$ | ！！ | \＃ | 3 | C | S | C | S | â | ô | ú | ＊ | ／ | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 | $\checkmark$ | ¢ | \＄ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | Ö | $\tilde{n}$ | 1 | ） | B | $\Sigma$ | 1 |
| 5 | 9 | § | \％ | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | $\tilde{N}$ | 1 | 3 | ？ | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 | 4 | － | \＆ | 6 | F | V | f | V | å | û | a | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 | $\bullet$ | $\underline{1}$ | ， | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | D | K | 0 | T | $\approx$ |
| 8 | － | $\uparrow$ | $($ | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | ÿ | ¿ | ＠ | 9 | P | $\Phi$ | － |
| 9 | $\bigcirc$ | $\downarrow$ | ） | 9 | I | Y | i | y | ё | Ö | г | ＜ | 6 | － | $\Theta$ |  |
| A | 0 | $\rightarrow$ | ＊ | ： | J | Z | j | Z | è | Ü | $\neg$ | 5 | ＝ | ＋ | $\Omega$ |  |
| B | $0^{*}$ | $\leftarrow$ | ＋ | ； | K | ［ | k | \｛ | ï | $\varnothing$ | $1 / 2$ | 7 | ； | \＄ | ठ | $\checkmark$ |
| C | \％ | ᄂ | ＇ | ＜ | L | 1 | 1 |  | ̂̂ | £ | $1 / 4$ | 8 | ： | （ | $\infty$ | n |
| D | d | $\leftrightarrow$ | － | ＝ | M | ］ | m | \} | ì | $\varnothing$ | i | E | 4 | \％ | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E | 月 | $\wedge$ | ． | $>$ | N | $\wedge$ | n | $\sim$ | Ä | $\mathrm{Pt}_{\mathrm{t}}$ | ＂ | A | ＞ | ＇ | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F | \％ | $\checkmark$ | ／ | ？ | O | － | 0 |  | A | $f$ | a | ， | N | \＆ | $\cap$ | $S P$ |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 |  |  | SP | 0 | @ | P | - | p | Ç | É | á | ! | . | J | $\alpha$ | 三 |
| 1 |  |  | $!$ | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | æ | í | " | 2 | L | $\beta$ | $\pm$ |
| 2 |  |  | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | $\ldots$ | ó | \# | 0 | H | $\Gamma$ | $\geq$ |
| 3 |  |  | \# | 3 | C | S | C | S | â | ô | ú | * | / | F | $\Pi$ | $\leq$ |
| 4 |  |  | \$ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | Ö | $\tilde{n}$ | 1 | ) | B | $\Sigma$ | $\uparrow$ |
| 5 |  | § | \% | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | N | I | 3 | ? | $\sigma$ | J |
| 6 |  |  | \& | 6 | F | V | f | V | å | û | a | M | G | C | $\mu$ | $\div$ |
| 7 |  |  | , | 7 | G | W | g | w | Ç | ù | $\bigcirc$ | D | K | 0 | T | $\approx$ |
| 8 |  |  | ( | 8 | H | X | h | X | ê | ÿ | ¿ | @ | 9 | P | $\Phi$ | - |
| 9 |  |  | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | ë | Ö | г | < | 6 | - | $\Theta$ | - |
| A |  |  | * | : | J | Z | J | z | è | Ü | $\neg$ | 5 | = | + | $\Omega$ | . |
| B |  |  | + | ; | K | [ | k | \{ | ï | ¢ | 1/2 | 7 | ; | \$ | $\delta$ | $\checkmark$ |
| C |  |  | , | < | L | 1 | 1 | \| | ̂̂ | £ | 1/4 | 8 | : | ( | $\infty$ | n |
| D |  |  | - | = | M | ] | m | \} | i | ¥ | i | E | 4 | \% | $\varnothing$ | 2 |
| E |  |  | . | > | N | $\wedge$ | n | $\sim$ | Ä | Pt | " | A | > | ' | $\epsilon$ | $\square$ |
| F |  |  | 1 | ? | 0 | - | 0 |  | A | $f$ | " | , | N | \& | $\bigcirc$ | SP |

7.1 National Version EPSON Extended graphics Character Table

|  | 23 | Character Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 24 | 40 | 5B | 5C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7 C | 7D | 7E |
| 1: USA | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ |
| 2: FRANCE | \# | \$ | à | 。 | Ç | § | $\wedge$ |  | é | ù | è | " |
| 3: GERMANY | \# | \$ | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ | - | ä | Ö | ü | B |
| 4: U.K. | £ | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ |
| 5: DENMARK | \# | \$ | @ | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | Å | $\wedge$ | - | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | $\sim$ |
| 6: SWEDEN | \# | - | É | Ä | Ö | Å | Ü | é | ä | Ö | å | ü |
| 7: ITALY | \# | \$ | @ | - | 1 | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | 1 |
| 8: SPAIN | Pt | \$ | @ | i | N | ¿ | $\wedge$ | - | ${ }^{*}$ | ñ | \} | $\sim$ |
| 9: JAPAN | \# | \$ | @ | [ | $¥$ | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | 1 | \} | $\sim$ |
| 10: NORWAY | \# | a | É | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | A | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 11: DENMARK 2 | \# | \$ | É | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | Å | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 12: SPAIN 2 | \# | \$ | á | 1 | N | ¿ | é | - | í | ñ | ó | ú |
| 13: LATIN AM. | \# | \$ | á | 1 | N | ¿ | é | Ü | í | ñ | ó | ú |
| 14: TURKEY | \# | ì | İ | Ç | Ö | Ş | Ü | ğ | Ç | Ö | Ş | ü |
| 15: LEGAL | \# | \$ | § | - | ' | " | II | - | ( $)$ | (8) | $\dagger$ | тм |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 |  |  | SP | 0 | @ | P | - | p |  |  | $S$ | 0 | @ | $P$ |  | $p$ |
| 1 |  |  | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q |  |  | $!$ | 1 | A | $Q$ | a | $q$ |
| 2 |  |  | " | 2 | B | R | b | r |  |  | " | 2 | $B$ | $R$ | $b$ | $r$ |
| 3 |  |  | \# | 3 | C | S | c | S |  |  | \# | 3 | C | $S$ | $c$ | $s$ |
| 4 |  |  | \$ | 4 | D | T | d | t |  |  | \$ | 4 | D | $T$ | $d$ | $t$ |
| 5 |  |  | \% | 5 | E | U | e | u |  |  | \% | 5 | $E$ | $U$ | e | $u$ |
| 6 |  |  | \& | 6 | F | V | f | v |  |  | \& | 6 | $F$ | $V$ | $f$ | $v$ |
| 7 |  |  | , | 7 | G | W | g | w |  |  | , | 7 | $G$ | W | $g$ | w |
| 8 |  |  | ( | 8 | H | X | h | X |  |  | $($ | 8 | H | $X$ | $h$ | $x$ |
| 9 |  |  | ) | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y |  |  | ) | 9 | 1 | $Y$ | $i$ | $y$ |
| A |  |  | * | : | J | Z | j | Z |  |  | * | : | $J$ | $Z$ | j | z |
| B |  |  | + | ; | K | [ | k | \{ |  |  | + | ; | K | [ | $k$ | \{ |
| C |  |  | , | < | L | 1 | 1 | \| |  |  | , | < | $L$ | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| D |  |  | - | $=$ | M | ] | m | \} |  |  | - | = | M | ] | $m$ | \} |
| E |  |  | . | > | N | $\wedge$ | n | ~ |  |  | . | > | $N$ | $\wedge$ | $n$ | $\sim$ |
| F |  |  | / | ? | O | - | 0 |  |  |  | 1 | ? | 0 | - | 0 |  |

This character table is selected by the command ESC $\mathbf{t}$.
7.3 National Version EPSON Italic Character Table (part 1)

|  | 23 | Character Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 24 | 40 | 5B | 5 C | 5D | 5E | 60 | 7B | 7 C | 7D | 7E |
| 1: USA | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | 1 | \} | $\sim$ |
| 2: FRANCE | \# | \$ | à | - | Ç | § | $\wedge$ | - | é | ù | è | ${ }^{*}$ |
| 3: GERMANY | \# | \$ | § | Ä | Ö | Ü | $\wedge$ | - | ä | Ö | ü | B |
| 4: U.K. | £ | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ |
| 5: DENMARK | \# | \$ | @ | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | A | $\wedge$ | - | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | $\sim$ |
| 6: SWEDEN | \# | a | É | Ä | Ö | Å | Ü | é | ä | Ö | å | ü |
| 7: ITALY | \# | \$ | @ | - | 1 | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | I |
| 8: SPAIN | Pt | \$ | @ | i | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | $\wedge$ | - | ${ }^{*}$ | ñ | \} | $\sim$ |
| 9: JAPAN | \# | \$ | @ | [ | \# | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | \| | \} | $\sim$ |
| 10: NORWAY | \# | a | É | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | A | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 11: DENMARK 2 | \# | \$ | É | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | A | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 12: SPAIN 2 | \# | \$ | á | i | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | é | - | í | ñ | ó | ú |
| 13: LATIN AM. | \# | \$ | á | 1 | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | é | Ü | í | ñ | ó | ú |
| 14: TURKEY | \# | ì | İ | Ç | Ö | Ş | Ü | ğ | Ç | Ö | Ş | ü |
| 15: LEGAL | \# | \$ | § | $\bigcirc$ | ' | " | II | - | (c) | ® | $\dagger$ | тм |


|  | Character Code (Hex) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | A3 | A4 | C0 | DB | DC | DD | DE | E0 | FB | FC | FD | FE |
| 1: USA | \# | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | 1 | \} | $\sim$ |
| 2: FRANCE | \# | \$ | à | 。 | ç | $\S$ | $\wedge$ |  | é | ù | è | * |
| 3: GERMANY | \# | \$ | $\S$ | $A ̈$ | Ö | $\ddot{U}$ | $\wedge$ | - | ä | 0 | ü | B |
| 4: U.K. | £ | \$ | @ | [ | 1 | ] | $\wedge$ |  | \{ | 1 | \} | $\sim$ |
| 5: DENMARK | \# | \$ | @ | AE | $\varnothing$ | A | $\wedge$ | - | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | $\sim$ |
| 6: SWEDEN | \# | a | É | $\ddot{A}$ | Ö | A | $\ddot{U}$ | é | ä | 0 | å | ü |
| 7: ITALY | \# | \$ | @ | - | 1 | é | $\wedge$ | ù | à | ò | è | ì |
| 8: SPAIN | $\mathrm{Pt}_{\mathrm{t}}$ | \$ | @ | i | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | $\wedge$ | , | * | $\tilde{n}$ | \} | $\sim$ |
| 9: JAPAN | \# | \$ | @ | [ | \# | ] | $\wedge$ | - | \{ | 1 | \} | $\sim$ |
| 10: NORWAY | \# | $\square$ | É | AE | $\varnothing$ | Å | $\ddot{U}$ | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 11: DENMARK 2 | \# | \$ | É | $\ldots$ | $\varnothing$ | Å | Ü | é | æ | $\varnothing$ | å | ü |
| 12: SPAIN 2 | \# | \$ | á | $i$ | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | é | $\cdot$ | í | $\tilde{n}$ | ó | ú |
| 13: LATIN AM. | \# | \$ | á | $i$ | $\tilde{N}$ | ¿ | é | $\ddot{U}$ | í | $\tilde{n}$ | ó | ú |
| 14: TURKEY | \# | ī | İ | Ç | Ö | Ş | Ü | ğ | ç | ӧ | Ş | ü |
| 15: LEGAL | \# | \$ | $\S$ | $\bigcirc$ | , | " | 9 | $\cdot$ | (c) | ${ }^{(8)}$ | $\dagger$ | TM |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | NUL | DLE | SP | 0 | @ | P | - | p |
| 1 | SOH | DC1 | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q |
| 2 | STX | DC2 | " | 2 | B | R | b | r |
| 3 | ETX | DC3 | \# | 3 | C | S | c | S |
| 4 | EOT | DC4 | \$ | 4 | D | T | d | t |
| 5 | ENQ | NAK | \% | 5 | E | U | e | u |
| 6 | ACK | SYN | \& | 6 | F | V | f | V |
| 7 | BEL | ETB | , | 7 | G | W | g | w |
| 8 | BS | CAN | ( | 8 | H | X | h | X |
| 9 | HT | EM | ) | 9 | 1 | Y | i | y |
| A | LF | sub | * | : | J | Z | j | z |
| B | VT | ESC | + | ; | K | [ | k | \{ |
| C | FF | FS | ᄀ | < | L | 1 | 1 | \| |
| D | CR | GR | - | $=$ | M | ] | m | \} |
| E | SO | RS | . | > | N | $\wedge$ | n | ऽ |
| $F$ | SI | US | 1 | ? | O | ¢ | 0 | \$ |

## Appendix D Philips General Printer (GP) QUICK REFERENCE

This appendix contains basic information on the Philips GP Emulation commands supported in three Printer types:


PRINTER TYPE 1


PRINTER TYPE 2


PRINTER TYPE 3

Some commands or parameters may be different for a specific PRINTER TYPE. In those cases it will be indicated to which PRINTER TYPE a command or parameter applies.

Characters used in control functions appear in monospaced type. Table 1 explains some of the conventions used.

A pair of numbers separated by a slash ( / ) character indicates Column/Row notation. This notation refers to the location of a character in a standard code table, such as ASCII. (example: $1 / B=1 B$ is the hex-code for Escape)

Spaces appear between characters in sequence for clarity; they are not part of the format.

At the end of this chapter you will find a listing of the GP-emulation commands classified by Hex Code and a Hex - Decimal conversion table

The following conventions are used in the command listings:

Table 1 Conventions

ESC Escape (1/B), introduces an escape sequence
Pn Numeric parameter, or number of units that specify a distance or quantity pertaining to the escape sequence, control function or control string. Accepted values are 0...9999, may be preceded by + or -
f the parameter is in normal notation like " 200 " the programming in hex-code is according to a ASCII table. ("200" = 32,30,30 in hex).
If the parameter must be programmed in hex-code the notation is with a slash. $(1 / A=1 A$ in hex-code)

Par To specify different parameters in an ESC sequence. Accepted values are numbers 0... 9 and ASCII characters.

SP Is standing for Space (hex 20)

Table 2: Control Codes

| Column/Row | Mnemonic | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |
| $0 / 0$ | NUL | Null |
| $0 / 8$ | BS | Backspace |
| $0 / 9$ | HT | Horizontal Tab |
| 0/A | LF | Line Feed |
| 0/B | VT | Vertical Tab |
| 0/C | FF | Form Feed |
| 0/D | CR | Carriage Return |
| 0/E | SO | Double Width Printing By Line (Shift Out) |
| 0/F | SI | Condensed Printing (Shift In) |
| 1/A | SUB | Substitute |
| 1/B | ESC | Initiate Escape Sequence |
| 2/0 | SP | Space |
| 7/F | DEL | Delete |

Table 3: Special Code Sequences

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC c | RIS | Reset to Initial State |
| ESC ? | TON | Start OFF-LINE-Test |
| ESC > | TOF | Stop OFF-LINE-Test |
| ESC [ 5 n | DSR | Device Status Report Poll |
| ESC P P1; P2 ; P3 ESC \ | DSRR | Device Status Report Response <br> P1 = primary status code <br> P2 = secondary status code <br> P3 = service status code |
| ESC [ P1; P2 SPr | SM \# | Select Macro and Change Emulation <br> P1 = 1: Macro 1 <br> P1 = 2: Macro 2 <br> P1 = 3: Macro 3 <br> P1 = 4: Macro 4 <br> P2 $=0$ : no change of emulation <br> P2 = 1: GP Emulation <br> P2 = 2: IBM ProPrinter Emulation <br> P2 = 3: IBM ProPrinter AGM Emulation <br> P2 = 4: EPSON Emulation |
| ESC [ | \$\$ | Control String Introducer (CSI) for ESC [ |
| ESC | \$\$ | Control String Introducer (CSI) for ESC |


| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic Function |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ESC $=$ | LTOF | Load Top of Form |
| ESC J | VTS | Set Vertical Tabulation at Current Line |
| ESC K | PLD | Subscript |
|  |  | PLU |
| ESC L |  | Ruperscript |
| ESC M |  | Reverse Line Feed (default ${ }^{1} / 6$ inch) |

[^3]| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1 / | RM | Reset Mode - Select Paper Source *) |
|  |  | P1 = 20 : Tractor Feed (if selected at operator panel) else AFS, Bin 3 (if selected at operator panel) or Manual (if selected at operator panel) |
|  |  | P1 = 21 : ASF, Bin 1 |
|  |  | P1 = 22 : ASF, Bin 2 |
| ESC [ > P1; P2 ; P3; P4 s | SPSIF | Select Paper Source and Insert Form |
|  |  | P1 = 0 : Manual Feed **) |
|  |  | P1 = 1 : ASF, Bin $1^{*}$ ) |
|  |  | P1 = 2 : ASF, Bin $2^{*}$ ) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 : ASF, Bin 3 *) |
|  |  | P1 = 6 : upper Tractor ****) |
|  |  | P1 = $7 \quad:$ Tractor Feed (lower Tractor) |
|  |  | P1 = 8 : ASF, Bins 1 or 2 *) |
|  |  | P1 = 9 : ASF, Bins 2 or $3^{*}$ ) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=10$ : ASF, Bins 1 or 2 or $3^{*}$ ) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=15$ : upper and lower tractor ****) |
|  |  | P2 = : see ACG/PCC above |
|  |  | P3 = 0 : Paper Exit Stacker ***) |
|  |  | P3 = $1 \quad$ : Paper Exit Front Side *) <br> (confirmed by Start/Stop) |
|  |  | P3 = 2 : Paper Exit Front Side *) (not confirmed by Start/Stop, controlled by application) |
|  |  | P3 = $3 \quad$ : Batch output; rear side |
|  |  | P4 Cut Mode On/Off: *****) |
|  |  | P4 = 0 : Cut Mode Off |
|  |  | P4 = 1 : Cut Mode On |
|  |  | P4 = 2 : Cut on actual position |

[^4]Table 4: (Cont.) Vertical Form Handling
Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

| ESC [ > s | IF | Insert Form |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1 s | SPS | Select Paper Source |
|  |  | P1 = 0 : Manual Feed **) |
|  |  | P1 = 1 : ASF, Bin $1^{*}$ ) |
|  |  | P1 = 2 : ASF, Bin 2 *) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 : ASF, Bin 3 *) |
|  |  | P1 = 6 : upper Tractor ${ }^{* * * *}$ ) |
|  |  | P1 = 7 : Tractor Feed (lower Tractor) |
|  |  | P1 = 8 : ASF, Bins 1 or 2 *) |
|  |  | P1 = 9 : ASF, Bins 2 or $3^{*}$ ) |
|  |  | P1 = 10 : ASF, Bins 1 or 2 or $3^{*}$ ) |
|  |  | P1 = 15 : upper and lower Tractor ${ }^{* * * *)}$ |
| ESC [ P1 d | VPA | Vertical Position Absolute |
|  |  | P1 : print line position with reference <br> to Top of Form/Top Margin |
|  |  | P1 $=0$ or 1 : print position to Top of Form / Top Margin |
| ESC [ P1e | VPR | Vertical Position Relative |
|  |  | P1 : print line position with reference to current position |
| ESC [P1 v | SPL | Select Page Length (tractor feed only) |
|  |  | P1 : numbers of lines |
|  |  | P1 = aquivalent to $3-22$ inches |
| ESC [ P1; P2 r | STBM | Set Top and Bottom Margin |
|  |  | P1 : position of top print line |
|  |  | P2 : position of bottom print line |

Table 4: (Cont.) Vertical Form Handling
Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

ESC [ P1 \{

ESC [P1 SPG

ESC [P1; P2 SPG

ESC [ ; P2 SPG

## SPIH

Line Space Load
$\mathrm{P} 1=1,2,3,4,6,8,12,16,24,48$,
60, 72, 90, 144, 180, 360

Spacing Increment Vertical
P1 : $1 / 720$ " $=$ vertical increment
P1 = 1-999

Spacing Increment Vertical and Horizontal
P1 : $1 / 720$ " $=$ vertical increment
P1 = 0-999
P2 : $1 / 720$ " $=$ horizontal increment
$\mathrm{P} 2=0-999$
Spacing Increment Horizontal
P2 $\quad 1 / 720$ " horizontal increment
P2 $=0-999$

Spacing Increment Horizontal $\mathrm{P} 2=0-999$

[^5]Table 5: Horizontal Form Handling

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline Escape Sequence \& Mnemonic \& Function <br>

\hline ESC [ P1 ${ }^{\text {- }}$ \& HPA \& | Horizontal Position Absolute |
| :--- |
| P1 : print position; P1 $=0$-9999 |
| Note: Character ${ }^{`}=60$ hex | <br>

\hline ESC [ P1 a \& HPR \& Horizontal Position Relative P1 : print position; P1 = 0-9999 <br>
\hline ESC [ P1 b \& RPT \& Repeat Character for graphics dot pattern P1 : number of repetitions; P1 = 1-999 Note: the last graphics byte before the RPT-Command will be repeated <br>

\hline ESC [P1 b \& RPT \& | Repeat Character *, ., or ; |
| :--- |
| P1 = number of repetitions; P1 = 1-999 |
| Note: the last character before the RPT- |
| Command will be repeated | <br>

\hline ESC H \& HTS \& Set Horizontal Tab at current print position <br>

\hline ESC [P1g \& TBC \& | Tabulation Clear |
| :--- |
| P1 = 0 : at active print pos. reset of tab and margin marker, at actual print position |
| P1 = 3 : reset of all horizontal tabs and margin markers |
| $P 1=4$ : reset of all vertical tabs and margin markers | <br>


\hline ESC [P1; P2 q \& SLRM \& | Set Left and Right Margin |
| :--- |
| P1 : left margin |
| P2 : right margin | <br>

\hline ESC ; \& SLM \& Set Left Margin at current print position <br>
\hline ESC 9 \& SRM \& Set Right Margin at current print position <br>
\hline
\end{tabular}

## Table 5 (Cont.): Horizontal Form Handling

Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function
ESC [P1 SPF

ESC [P1; P2 SPG
SPIVH Spacing Increment Vertical and Horizontal
P1 : $1 / 720$ " $=$ vertical increment
$\mathrm{P} 1=0-999$
P2 : $1 / 720$ " = horizontal increment
$\mathrm{P} 2=0-999$

ESC [ 24 h
Set Mode Unidirectional Printing
Note: the operator panel setting UNI-
DIRECT.CMD must be set to YES

ESC [ 24 /
RM Reset Mode Unidirectional Printing

ESC [P1 y
SSS Select Horizontal Step Size;
P1 = 0-7

| P1 | 10 cpi | 12 cpi | 15 cpi | prop. | 14.4 cpi | 18 cpi |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | $1 / 10$ | $1 / 12$ | $1 / 15$ | prop. | $1 / 14.4$ | $1 / 18$ |
| 1 | $1 / 10$ | $1 / 12$ | $1 / 15$ | $1 / 10$ | $1 / 14.4$ | $1 / 18$ |
| 2 | $1 / 20$ | $1 / 24$ | $1 / 30$ | $1 / 30$ | $1 / 20$ | $1 / 20$ |
| 3 | $1 / 30$ | $1 / 36$ | $1 / 45$ | $1 / 30$ | $1 / 30$ | $1 / 30$ |
| 4 | $1 / 60$ | $1 / 72$ | $1 / 90$ | $1 / 60$ | $1 / 60$ | $1 / 60$ |
| 5 | $1 / 120$ | $1 / 120$ | $1 / 120$ | $1 / 120$ | $1 / 120$ | $1 / 120$ |
| 6 | $1 / 180$ | $1 / 180$ | $1 / 180$ | $1 / 180$ | $1 / 180$ | $1 / 180$ |
| 7 | $1 / 360$ | $1 / 360$ | $1 / 360$ | $1 / 360$ | $1 / 360$ | $1 / 360$ |
| Note: | the values in the table are in inches |  |  |  |  |  |

Escape Sequence
Mnemonic Function

ESC [ ; P2 w
SCT Set Code Table
$\mathrm{P} 2=3$ digit code of the code table
P2 = 011 : NV 1.0
P2 = 012 : NV 2.3
P2 = 013 : NV 2.5
P2 = 014 : NV 2.6
P2 = 015 : NV 2.8
P2 = 031 : ISO 8859/1; ECMA 94
P2 = 032 : ISO 8859/15
2 $=061$ : IBM Set 1
P2 = 062 : IBM Set 2
P2 $=063$ : IBM Code Page ${ }^{1)}$
P2 = 071 : EPSON Ext. G. C. T

1) depending on selected character set (P1 in SNV or SNVCT) the IBM CODE PAGE $437,850,860,863,865$, or 858 will be activated

ESC [P1; P2 SPB
GSM
Graphic Size Modification
P1 = 100 : normal height
P1 = 200 : double height
$P 1=300$ : triple height
P1 = 400 : quadruple height
P1 = max. 800 in steps of 100

P2 = 100 : normal width
P2 = 200 : double width
$\mathrm{P} 2=300$ : triple width
P2 = 400 : quadruple width
P2 = max. 800 in steps of 100

Graphic Size Modification for DATA LARGE
P1 = 100: normal heigh
$P 2=100$ : normal width
1 and P2 max. 9900 in steps of 100

Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function
ESC [P1;P2 SPD FNT Font Selection

P1 = 1: Data
P1 = 2: Letter Gothic
P1 = 3: Letter Gothic Italic
P1 = 4: Courier
$\mathrm{P} 1=5: \quad$ Micro
P1 = 6: Orator
1 = 7: Orator-C
P1 = 8: Roman
P1 = 9: Prestige
P1 = 10: Script
P1 = 11: OCR A
1 = 12: OCR B
P1 = 13: DATA BLOCK
P1 = 14: DATA LARGE

P2 = an 8 bit parameter specifying the font characteristics as follows:

P2 = 0 0 1111011: Data
P2 = 01211011 : Letter Gothic P2 = 01221011 : Letter Gothic Italic P2 = 0 021 1011: Courie P2 = 03211011 : Micro $\mathrm{P} 2=06211011$ : Orator P2 = 13211011 : Orator-C $\mathrm{P} 2=10211011$ : Roman $\mathrm{P} 2=1$
P 2
1 12111011 : Prestige P2 = 12211011 : Script P2 = 70211011 :OCR P2 0 0315411: Oat P2 0711 0011: Data

Escape Sequence
Mnemonic Function

ESC [ P1; P2 w SNVCT Set National Version and Code Table P1 = 1-15 national version depending on selected character set (see Appendix C Character Set Tables)
P1 for national version NV-2.5:
P1 $=1 \quad:$ Germany
P1 $=2 \quad$ Great Britain
P1 = 2 : Great Britain
P1 $=3$ : France
$\begin{array}{ll}P 1=4 \\ \text { P1 }=5 & \text { : Italy }\end{array}$
P1 $=6$ : Swed
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { P1 }=6 & \text { : Sweden } \\ \text { P1 }=7 & \text { : Denmark }\end{array}$
P1 = 8 : Portugal
P1 $=8 \quad$ : Portugal
P1 $=9 \quad$ Sweden 2
P1 $=10:$ USA
P1 = 11 : Finland
P2 = 3 digit code of the code table (see Appendix C Character Set
Tables)
P2 $=011$ : NV-1.0
$\mathrm{P} 2=012$ :NV- 2
$\mathrm{P} 2=013 \cdot \mathrm{NV}-\mathrm{P}^{2}$
P2 $=014: N V-26$
P2 = 031 1: ISO 8859/1, ECMA-94
P2 = 032 : ISO 8859/15
P2 = 061 : IBM Set 1
P2 = 062 : IBM Set
P2 $=063$ : IBM Code Page ${ }^{1)}$
P2 = 071 : EPSON EXT. GCT

1) depending on selected character set (P1) the IBM CODE PAGE 437, 850, 860, 863,865 , or $858(\mathrm{P} 1=\& ; \mathrm{P} 2=63)$ will be activated!

Escape Sequence
Mnemonic Function

ESC [P1; P2 X
CPL Select Font (P1) and Character Pitch (P2)
P1 = 1: Data
P1 = 2: Letter Gothic
P1 = 3: Letter Gothic Italic
P1 = 4: Courier
P1 = 5: Micro
P1 = 6: Orator
P1 = 7: Orator-C
P1 = 8: Roman
P1 = 9: $\quad$ Prestige
P1 = 10: Script
$P 1$ = 11: OCR A
1 = 12: OCR B
P1 = 13: DATA BLOCK
P1 = 14: DATA LARGE

P2 = 1: $\quad 10 \mathrm{cpi}$
P2 = 2: $\quad 12 \mathrm{cpi}$
P2 = 3: $\quad 15 \mathrm{cp}$
2 = 4: proportiona
P2 = 5: proportional
P2 = 6: $\quad 14,4 \mathrm{cpi}$
P2 = 7: 18 cpi
$\mathrm{P} 2=8: \quad 17 \mathrm{cpi}$ 2 2 9: $\quad 20 \mathrm{cp}$

Table 6 (Cont.): Font Selection, National Version and Code Table Handling

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1 m | SGR | Set Graphic Rendition |
|  |  | P1 = 0: default - no rendition or rendition reset |
|  |  | P1 = 1: bold |
|  |  | P1 = 3: italics |
|  |  | P 1 = 4: underline |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=9$ : crossed out or strike through |
|  |  | P1 = 20 : double width |
|  |  | P1 = 2 1: double underline |
|  |  | P1 = 2 2: bold reset |
|  |  | P1 = 2 3: italics reset |
|  |  | P1 = 2 4: underline reset |
|  |  | P1 = 2 9: crossed out reset |
|  |  | P1 = 30 : black *) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 1: orange *) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 2: green *) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 3: yellow *) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 4: purple *) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 5: magenta (red) *) |
|  |  | P1 = 3 6: cyan (blue) *) |
|  |  | P1 = 5 3: over-lined |
|  |  | P1 = 5 5: over-lined reset |
| ESC [P1 SP X | SPQ | Select Print Quality |
|  |  | P1 = 0: LQ |
|  |  | P1 = 1: NLQ |

## Table 7: Graphics Modes

Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

|  |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| ESC * P1 P2 P3 v1 $\ldots$ vn | Select Various Graphics Modes |
|  | P2 + P3 * $256=$ number of columns |
| $(P 2, P 3=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F})$ |  |

Parameter Table Graphic Density:
$\left.\begin{array}{llllllll}\text { P1 } & \text { Graphic type } & \begin{array}{l}\text { dots } \\ \text { per } \\ \text { column }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { max. } \\ \text { of } \\ \text { columns }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { hor. } \\ \text { density } \\ \text { (dpi })\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { vert. } \\ \text { density } \\ \text { no AGM }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { vert. } \\ \text { density }\end{array} & \\ \text { AGM }\end{array}\right]$
*) consecutive horizontal dots cannot be printed.
Example: box $8 \times 8$ dots with center point $2 \times 2$ dots, standard density, 8 dots / column hex: 1B 2A 000800 FF 818199998181 FF

ESC [ P1 h

ESC [P1/

SM Set Mode Dot Graphics
P1 = graphics resolution
P1 = 2 5: 72x60 dpi dot format (VxH)
P1 = 2 6: 72x72 dpi dot format (VxH)
P1 = 2 7: 144×120 dpi dot format $(\mathrm{VxH})$
P1 = 2 8: $144 \times 144$ dpi dot format $(\mathrm{VxH})$

Reset Mode Dot Graphics
P1 = graphics resolution
P1 = 2 5: 72x60 dpi dot format $(\mathrm{VxH})$
P1 = 2 6: 72x72 dpi dot format $(\mathrm{VxH})$
P1 = 2 7: $144 \times 120$ dpi dot format $(\mathrm{VxH})$
P1 = 2 8: $144 \times 144$ dpi dot format $(\mathrm{VxH})$

Appendix D Philips GP Quick Reference

Table 8: Barcode Printing (for detail information see Appendix G)

Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

ESC [ ; P2 ; P3 ; P4 ; P5 ; P6 ; P7 SPz

BH Barcode Header
P2: Barcode typ
P3: Height of barcode
P4: Width of the thin bars
P5: Width of the thin gaps
P6 : Ratio width to thin
P7 : Uni-directional or bidirectional printing
P7 = 0 : or not programmed: means no changes
$P 7=1$ : uni-directional printing in LQ
$P 7=2$ : bi-directional printing in LQ P7 = 3 : uni-directional printing in NLQ P7 = 4 : bi-directional printing in NLQ

Note: $\quad$ A switch from uni-directional to bidirectional printing is only possible if the parameter UNI-DIRECT.CMD is set to YES via operator panel or ESC-sequence.

## GP - Emulation classified by Hex Code

| Hex Code | Mnemonic | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 | Null | D-3 |
| 08 | Backspace | D-3 |
| 09 | Horizontal Tab | D-3 |
| OA | Line Feed | D-3 |
| OB | Vertical Tab | D-3 |
| OC | Form Feed | D-3 |
| OD | Carriage Return | D-3 |
| OE | Shift Out | D-3 |
| OF | Shift In | D-3 |
| 1A | Substitude | D-3 |
| 1B | Escape | D-3 |
| 20 | Space | D-3 |
| 7F | Delete | D-3 |
| 1B 39 | Set Right Margin at Current | D-9 |
| 1B 3B | Set Left Margin at Current | D-9 |
| 1B 3D | Load Top Of Form | D-5 |
| 1B 3E | Stop OFF-Line Test | D-4 |
| 76 3F | Start OFF-Line Test | D-4 |
| 1B 48 | Set Horizontal Tab at Current | D-9 |
| 1B 4A | Set Vertical Tab at Current | D-5 |
| 1B 4B | Subscript | D-5 |
| 1B 4C | Superscript | D-5 |
| 1B 4D | Reverse Line Feed | D-5 |

Appendix D Philips GP Quick Reference

| Hex Code | Mnemonic | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1B 63 | Reset to Initial State | D-4 |
| 2424 | Control String Introducer for ESC [ | D-4 |
| 24242 F | Control String Introducer for ESC | D-4 |
| 1B 2A $\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ data | Select Various Graphic Modes | D-16 |
| 1B $50 \mathrm{P}_{1} 3 \mathrm{BP} \mathrm{P}_{2} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{3} 1 \mathrm{~B} 5 \mathrm{C}$ | Device Status Report Response | D-4 |
| 1B 5B 356 E | Device Status Report Poll | D-4 |
| 1B 5B 3B P 2047 | Spacing Increment Horizontal | D-8 |
| 1B 5B 3B P ${ }_{2} 73$ | AGC/PCC Procedure | D-5 |
| 1B 5B 3B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 77$ | Set Code Table | D-11 |
| $\begin{array}{\|\|l\|l} 1 B 5 B 3 B P_{2} 3 B P_{3} 3 B P_{4} 3 B P_{5} \\ 3 B P_{6} 3 B P_{7} 207 A \\ \hline \end{array}$ | Barcode Header | D-18 |
| 1B 5B 3C 73 | Eject Form | D-5 |
| 1B 5B 3E 73 | Insert Form | D-6 |
| 1B 5B 3E $\mathrm{P}_{1} 3$ B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 3$ B $\mathrm{P}_{3} 3$ B $\mathrm{P}_{4} 73$ | Select Paper Source and Insert Form | D-6 |
| 1B 5B 3F 3068 | Set Mode Barcode | D-18 |
| 1B 5B 3F 30 6C | Reset Mode Barcode | D-18 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 2046$ | Justify | D-10 |
| 1B 5B P 2047 | Spacing Increment Vertical | D-8 |
| 1B 5B P 2058 | Select Print Quality | D-15 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1}$ 3B P 2072 | Select Makro and Change Emulation | D-4 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1}$ 3B P 2042 | Graphic Size Modification | D-11 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1}$ 3B P 2047 | Spacing Increment Vert. and Horiz. | D-8 |
| 1B 5B $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ 3B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 71$ | Set Left and Right Margin | D-9 |
| 1B 5B $\mathrm{P}_{1} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{2} 72$ | Set Top and Bottom Margin | D-7 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{2} 77$ | Set National version and Code Table | D-13 |

Appendix D Philips GP Quick Reference

| Hex Code | Mnemonic | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1}$ 3B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 78$ | Select Font and Character Pitch | D-14 |
| 1B 5B P 60 | Horizontal Position Absolute | D-9 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 61$ | Horizontal Position Relative | D-9 |
| 1B 5B P 62 | Repeat Character | D-9 |
| 1B 5B P $\mathrm{P}_{1} 64$ | Vertical Position Absolute | D-7 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 65$ | Vertical Position Relative | D-7 |
| 1B 5B P 67 | Tabulation Clear | D-9 |
| 1B 5B 323468 | Set Mode Unidirctional Printing | D-10 |
| 1B 5B P 68 | Set Mode Select Paper Source | D-10 |
| 1B 5B P 68 | Set Mode Select Dot Graphics | D-17 |
| 1B 5B 3234 6C | Reset Mode Unidirectional Printing | D-10 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 6 \mathrm{C}$ | Reset Mode Select Paper Source | D-10 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 6 \mathrm{C}$ | Reset Mode Dot Graphics | D-17 |
| 1B 5B P $\mathrm{P}_{1} 6 \mathrm{D}$ | Set Graphic Rendition | D-15 |
| 1B 5B P $\mathrm{P}_{1} 73$ | Select Paper Source | D-7 |
| 1B 5B P $\mathrm{P}_{1} 76$ | Select Page Length | D-7 |
| 1B 5B P 77 | Set National Version and Code Table | D-13 |
| 1B 5B P $\mathrm{P}_{1} 79$ | Select Horizontal Step Size | D-10 |
| 1B 5B $\mathrm{P}_{1} 7 \mathrm{~B}$ | Line Space Load | D-8 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1}$ 3B P ${ }_{2} 2044$ | Font Selection | D-12 |

## Hex - Decimal Conversion Table

|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | 16 | 32 | 48 | 64 | 80 | 96 | 112 | 128 | 144 | 160 | 176 | 192 | 208 | 224 | 240 |
| 1 | 1 | 17 | 33 | 49 | 65 | 81 | 97 | 113 | 129 | 145 | 161 | 177 | 193 | 209 | 225 | 241 |
| 2 | 2 | 18 | 34 | 50 | 66 | 82 | 98 | 114 | 130 | 146 | 162 | 178 | 194 | 210 | 226 | 242 |
| 3 | 3 | 19 | 35 | 51 | 67 | 83 | 99 | 115 | 131 | 147 | 163 | 179 | 195 | 211 | 227 | 243 |
| 4 | 4 | 20 | 36 | 52 | 68 | 84 | 100 | 116 | 132 | 148 | 164 | 180 | 196 | 212 | 228 | 244 |
| 5 | 5 | 21 | 37 | 53 | 69 | 85 | 101 | 117 | 133 | 149 | 165 | 181 | 197 | 213 | 229 | 245 |
| 6 | 6 | 22 | 38 | 54 | 70 | 86 | 102 | 118 | 134 | 150 | 166 | 182 | 198 | 214 | 230 | 246 |
| 7 | 7 | 23 | 39 | 55 | 71 | 87 | 103 | 119 | 135 | 151 | 167 | 183 | 199 | 215 | 231 | 247 |
| 8 | 8 | 24 | 40 | 56 | 72 | 88 | 104 | 120 | 136 | 152 | 168 | 184 | 200 | 216 | 232 | 248 |
| 9 | 9 | 25 | 41 | 57 | 73 | 89 | 105 | 121 | 137 | 153 | 269 | 185 | 201 | 217 | 233 | 249 |
| A | 10 | 26 | 42 | 58 | 74 | 90 | 106 | 122 | 138 | 154 | 170 | 186 | 202 | 218 | 234 | 250 |
| B | 11 | 27 | 43 | 59 | 75 | 91 | 107 | 123 | 139 | 155 | 171 | 187 | 203 | 219 | 235 | 251 |
| C | 12 | 28 | 44 | 60 | 76 | 92 | 108 | 124 | 140 | 156 | 172 | 188 | 204 | 220 | 236 | 252 |
| D | 13 | 29 | 45 | 61 | 77 | 93 | 109 | 125 | 141 | 157 | 173 | 189 | 205 | 221 | 237 | 253 |
| E | 14 | 30 | 46 | 62 | 78 | 94 | 110 | 126 | 142 | 158 | 174 | 190 | 206 | 222 | 238 | 254 |
| F | 15 | 31 | 47 | 63 | 79 | 95 | 111 | 127 | 143 | 159 | 175 | 191 | 207 | 223 | 239 | 255 |

## Appendix E IBM ProPrinter Quick Reference

This appendix contains basic information on the IBM ProPrinter 4207, 4208 XL 24 Emulation commands supported in three Printer types:


## PRINTER TYPE 1



PRINTER TYPE 2


## PRINTER TYPE 3

Some commands or parameters may be different for a specific PRINTER TYPE. In those cases it will be indicated to which PRINTER TYPE a command or parameter applies.

Characters used in control functions appear in monospaced type. Table 1 explains some of the conventions used

A pair of numbers separated by a slash ( / ) character indicates Column/Row notation. This notation refers to the location of a character in a standard code table, such as ASCII. (example: $1 / B=1 B$ is the hex-code for Escape)

Spaces appear between characters in sequence for clarity; they are not part of the format.

At the end of this chapter you will find a listing of the IBM ProPrinter Emulation commands classified by Hex Code and a Hex - Decimal conversion table.

The following conventions are used in the command listings:
Table 1 Conventions

ESC Escape (1/B), introduces an escape sequence
Pn Numeric parameter, or number of units that specify a distance or quantity pertaining to the escape sequence, control function or control string.
Accepted values are $0 . . .9999$, may be preceded by + or -.
If the parameter is in normal notation like "200" the programming in hex-code is according to a ASCII table. ("200" = 32,30,30 in hex).
If the parameter must be programmed in hex-code the notation is with a slash. ( $1 / \mathrm{A}=1 \mathrm{~A}$ in hex-code)
$\mathrm{v} 1 \ldots \mathrm{vn}$ A series of parameters pertaining to the escape sequence, control function or control string
$S P \quad$ Is standing for Space (hex 20)

## Table 2: Control Codes

| Column/Row | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0/0 | NUL | Null |
| 0/8 | BS | Backspace |
| 0/9 | HT | Horizontal Tab |
| 0/A | LF | Line Feed |
| 0/B | VT | Vertical Tab |
| O/C | FF | Form Feed |
| 0/D | CR | Carriage Return |
| 0/E | SO | Double Width Printing By Line |
| 0/F | SI | Condensed Printing (17.1 cpi) |
| 1/1 | DC1 | Select Printer |
| 1/2 | DC2 | Select Pica (10 cpi) |
| 1/3 | DC3 | Buffer Data Flow Control |
| 1/4 | DC4 | Cancel Double Width Printing By Line |
| 1/8 | CAN | Cancel Buffer |
| 1/B | ESC | Initiate Escape Sequence |
| 2/0 | SP | Space |
| 7/F | DEL | Delete |
| 1/B 6/A | ESC j | Set Printer Off Line |
| 1/B 5/1 2/3 | ESC Q | Deselect Printer |
| 1/B 5/1 2/4 | ESC Q | Deselect Printer |



## Table 3 (Cont.): Vertical Form Handling

Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

| ESC ] |  | Reverse Line Feed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC ] > s | IF | Insert Form |
| Native Command |  |  |
| ESC [ > P1; P2 ; P3; P4 s Native Command | SPSIF | Select Paper Source and Insert Form, Print Gap, Paper Exit, Cut-Mode (any parameter > or P may be skipped, see following alternative command sequences); > = Insert Form |

ESC [P1 s
Native Command

SPS Paper Source:
P1 = 0 : Manual Feed **)
P1 = 1 : ASF, Bin $1^{*}$ )
P1 = 2 : ASF, Bin 2 *)
P1 = $3 \quad:$ ASF, Bin 3 *)
P1 = 6 : upper Tractor ${ }^{* * *) ~}$
P1 = $7 \quad:$ Tractor Feed (lower Tractor)
P1 = 8 : ASF, Bins 1 or $2^{*}$ )
P1 = 9 : ASF, Bins 2 or $3^{*}$ )
P1 = 10 : ASF, Bins 1 or 2 or $3^{*}$ )
P1 = 15 : upper and lower tractor ***)

AGC/PCC Procedure:
P2 = 0 : Automatic Gap Control
P2 = 1 : Print Gap for 1-ply copy
P2 = 2 : Print Gap for 2-ply copies
P2 = 3 : Print Gap for 3-ply copies
P2 = 4 : Print Gap for 4-ply copies P2 $=5$ : Print Gap for 5-ply copies P2 = 6 : Print Gap for 6-ply copies

[^6]Table 3 (Cont.): Vertical Form Handling
Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function
ESC [; P3 s Paper Exit
Native Command $\quad \mathrm{P} 3=0$ : Paper Exit Stacker ***)

P3 = 1: Paper Exit Front Side *) (confirmed by Start/Stop key)
P3 = 2 : Paper Exit Front Side *) (not confirmed by Start/Stop key, controlled by application) P3 = 3 : Batch output; rear side

ESC [; ; ; P4 s
Native Command

Cut Mode On/Off: ****)
P4 = 0: Cut Mode Off
P4 = 1: Cut Mode On
P4 = 2 : Cut on actual position
(cutting edge is approximate 4 mm above the base of the actual line)

## ***) only PRINTER TYPE 1 and PRINTER TYPE 3 <br> *) only PRINTER TYPE 1 <br> ****) only PRINTER TYPE 3

## Table 4: Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC | Select Elite (12 cpi) |
| ESC - P1 | Cancel / Select Underline <br> P1 = 0/0 cancel Underline Printing <br> P1 $=0 / 1$ set Underline Printing |
| ESC _P1 | Cancel / Select Overline Printing P1 = 0/0 cancel Overline Printing P1 $=0 / 1$ set Overline Printing |
| ESC [ @ EOT NUL NUL NUL P1 P2 <br> Example: <br> Coding to and "double 1B 5B 400 | Double, Multiple -Width/ - Height Mode P1 controls line spacing (e.g. 0/x) and character height (e.g. x/0) <br> P2 controls character width <br> P1 $=0 / x$ line spacing unchanged <br> $P 1=1 / x$ single line space <br> P1 $=2 / x$ double line space <br> $P 1=3 / x$ triple line space <br> P1 $=4 / x$ quadruple line space <br> $P 1=x / 0$ charcter height unchanged <br> $P 1=x / 1$ single charcter height <br> P1 $=x / 2$ double character height <br> P1 $=x / 3$ triple character height <br> $\mathrm{P} 1=\mathrm{x} / 4$ quadruple character height <br> P2 $=0 / 0$ character width unchanged <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=0 / 1$ single character width <br> P2 $=0 / 2$ double character width <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=0 / 3$ triple character width <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=0 / 4$ quadruple character width <br> uble line space", "double character height", <br> er width" in Hex: <br> 002202 |
| ESC D NUL | Clear all Horizontal Tabs |
| ESC D P1 P2 ... P32 NUL | Set Horizontal Tabs (P1...P32 = 0/1...F/F) |

Table 4 (Cont.): Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC E | Select Emphasized Printing (bold) |
| ESC F | Cancel Emphasized Printing (bold) |
| ESC G | Select Double Strike Printing (bold) |
| ESC H | Cancel Double Strike Printing |
| ESC IP1 | Select Character Mode <br> P1 $=0 / 0$ : Draft, 10 cpi <br> P1 $=0 / 1$ : Draft, Proportional <br> P1 $=0 / 2$ : Courier, 10 cpi <br> P1 $=0 / 3$ : Courier, Proportional <br> P1 $=0 / 8$ : Draft, 12 cpi <br> P1 $=0 / \mathrm{A}$ : Courier, 12 cpi <br> P1 $=1 / 0$ : Draft, 17 cpi <br> P1 = 1/2 : Courier, 17 cpi |
| ESC P P1 | Cancel / Select Proportional Printing P1 $=0 / 0$ or 0 : cancel Proportional <br> P1 $=0 / 1$ or 1 : select Proportional |
| ESC R | Restore Horizontal Tabs to Default |
| ESC S P1 | Select Superscript/Subscript <br> P1 $=0 / 0$ or 0 : select Superscript <br> P1 $=0 / 1$ or 1 : select Subscript |
| ESC T | Cancel Superscript/Subscript |
| ESC U P1 | Cancel / Select Unidirectional Printing <br> P1 $=0 / 0$ or 0 : cancel Unidirectional <br> P1 $=0 / 1$ or 1 : select Unidirectional |

Table 4 (Cont.): Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC W P1 |  | Cancel / Select Double Width |
|  |  | P1 $=0 / 0$ or 0 : cancel Double Width |
|  |  | P1 $=0 / 1$ or 1 : select Double Width |
| ESC X P1 P2 |  | Set Left and Right Margins |
|  |  | P1 : Left Margin |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 2:$ Right Margin $\quad(\mathrm{Pn}=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F})$ |
| ESC d P1 P2 |  | Set Relative Horizontal Dot Position |
|  |  | (P1 + P2 $\times 256$ )/120" (Pn = 0/0...F/F) |
| ESC < |  | Home Position of Printhead (left margin) |
| ESC ; |  | Set Left Margin at Current Position |
| ESC [P1 SPr Native Command | SPQ | Select Print Quality LQ / NLQ |
|  |  | P1 = 0 : LQ |
|  |  | P1 = 1 : NLQ |

Table 4 (Cont.): Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1; P2 x <br> Native Command | CPL | Select Font and Character Pitch (parameter P1 or P2 may be skipped, see following alternative command sequences) |
| ESC [P1 x possible format of Native Command CPL |  | $P 1$ selects the font  <br> $P 1=0$ or missing : Font is unchanged <br> $P 1=1$ : Data <br> $P 1=2$ : Letter Gothic <br> $P 1=3$ : Letter Gothic Italic <br> $P 1=4$ :Courier <br> $P 1=5$ : Micro <br> $P 1=6$ : Orator <br> $P 1=7$ : Orator-C <br> $P 1=8$ :Roman <br> $P 1=9$ :Prestige <br> $P 1=10$ :Script <br> $P 1=11$ :OCR A <br> $P 1=12$ :OCR B <br> $P 1=13$ : Data Block <br> $P 1=14$ : Data Large |
| ESC [ ; P2 x possible format of Native Command CPL |  | P2 selects the character pitch  <br> P2 $=0$ or missing $:$ Pitch is unchanged <br> P2 $=1$ $: 10 \mathrm{cpi}$ <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=2$ $: 12 \mathrm{cpi}$ <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=3$ $: 15 \mathrm{cpi}$ <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=4$ $:$ (proportional) <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=5$ $:$ proportional <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=6$ $: 14.4 \mathrm{cpi}$ <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=7$ $: 18 \mathrm{cpi}$ <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=8$ $: 17 \mathrm{cpi}$ <br> $\mathrm{P} 2=9$ $: 20 \mathrm{cpi}$ |

## Table 5: Character Set Selection

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC 6 | Select Character Set 2 |
| ESC 7 | Select Character Set 1 |
| $E S C \backslash P 1$ P2 | Print from All Character Set <br> Number of codes $=(\mathrm{P} 1+\mathrm{P} 2$ * 256 $)$ $(\mathrm{Pn}=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F})$ |
| $E S C \wedge$ P1 | Print Single Character from All Character Set <br> P1 = Number of Char. Set or Code Page ( $\mathrm{Pn}=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F}$ ) |
| ESC [ T n1 n2 NUL NUL P1 P2 | Code Page Switching $\mathrm{n} 1=4, \mathrm{n} 2=0$ <br> P1 P2 for Code-Page number, most significant byte first. |

## Table 6: Graphics Modes

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC 3 P1 | Set Line Space to ${ }^{\mathrm{P} 1 / 216}{ }^{\mathrm{F}}\left({ }^{\left.\mathrm{P} 1 / 180^{\prime \prime}\right)}\right.$ <br> ${ }^{P 1 / 216}$ lpi (non AGM), <br> ${ }^{\text {P1/ }} 180$ Ipi (AGM) $(P 1=0 / 1 \ldots F / F)$ |
| ESC J P1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Perform }{ }^{\mathrm{P} 1 / 216 "\left({ }^{\mathrm{P} 1} / 180^{\prime \prime}\right) \text { Line Feed }} \\ & \mathrm{P} 1_{1}^{2} / 216 \mathrm{lpi}(\text { non } \mathrm{AGM}), \\ & { }^{\mathrm{P} 1} /{ }_{180} \mathrm{lpi}(\mathrm{AGM}) \quad \\ & (\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F}) \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC K P1 P2 v1 . . vn | Standard Density Graphics Mode $\begin{aligned} & (P 1+P 2 * 256)=\text { number of data } \\ & \qquad(P n=0 / 0 \ldots F / F) \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC L P1 P2 v1 . . vn | Double Density Graphics Mode $\begin{aligned} & (P 1+P 2 * 256)=\text { number of data } \\ & \qquad(P n=0 / 0 \ldots F / F) \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC Y P1 P2 v1 . . vn | Double Speed \& Density Graphics Mode $\begin{aligned} & (P 1+P 2 * 256)=\text { number of data } \\ & \qquad(P n=0 / 0 \ldots F / F) \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC Z P1 P2 v1 . . vn | Quadruple Density Graphics Mode $\begin{aligned} & (P 1+P 2 * 256)=\text { number of data } \\ & \qquad(P n=0 / 0 \ldots F / F) \end{aligned}$ |

Table 6 (Cont.): Graphics Modes

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ g P1 P2 P3 v1 . . vn |  | Select Various Graphics Modes (IBM) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1+\mathrm{P} 2$ * $256=$ number of data bytes +1 |
|  |  | ( $\mathrm{P} 1, \mathrm{P} 2=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F}$ ) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{v} 1 . . \mathrm{vn}=$ binary data in hex code |

Parameter Table Graphic Density:

| P3 | Graphic type | dots <br> per <br> column | max. <br> of <br> columns | hor. <br> density <br> (dpi $)$ | vert. <br> density <br> no AGM | vert. <br> density <br> AGM |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0/0 | Standard Density (K) | 8 | 816 | 60 | 72 | 60 |  |
| $0 / 1$ | Double Density (L) | 8 | 1632 | 120 | 72 | 60 |  |
| $0 / 2$ | 2xDensity / 2xSpeed (Y) | 8 | 1632 | 120 | 72 | 60 | $\left.{ }^{*}\right)$ |
| $0 / 3$ | Quadruple Density (Z) | 8 | 3264 | 240 | 72 | 60 | *) |
| 0/8 | Standard Density | 24 | 816 | 60 | 180 | 180 |  |
| 0/9 | Double Density | 24 | 1632 | 120 | 180 | 180 |  |
| 0/B | Triple Density | 24 | 2448 | 180 | 180 | 180 |  |
| 0/C | Hex Density | 24 | 4896 | 360 | 180 | 180 | *) |

*) consecutive horizontal dots cannot be printed.

Example: box $8 \times 8$ dots with center point $2 \times 2$ dots, standard density, 8 dots / column hex: 1B 5B 67090000 FF 818199998181 FF

Appendix E IBM ProPrinter 4207, 4208 XL 24 Quick Refernce

## Table 7: Further Control Sequences, supported by

IBM Emulation Mode (Native Commands)

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ | \$\$ | Control String Introducer (CSI) for 'ESC [' |
| ESC | \$\$/ | Control String Introducer (CSI) for 'ESC' |
| ESC * P1 P2 P3 v1 . . vn |  | Select Various Graphics Modes $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P} 2+\mathrm{P} 3 * 256=\text { number of columns } \\ & \text { (P2,P3 }=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F}) \\ & \mathrm{v} 1 . . \mathrm{vn}=\text { binary data in hex code } \end{aligned}$ |

Parameter Table Graphic Density:
$\left.\begin{array}{llllllll}\text { P1 } & \text { Graphic type } & \begin{array}{l}\text { dots } \\ \text { per } \\ \text { column }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { max. } \\ \text { of } \\ \text { columns }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { hor. } \\ \text { density } \\ \text { (dpi })\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { vert. } \\ \text { density } \\ \text { no AGM }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { vert. } \\ \text { density }\end{array} & \\ \text { AGM }\end{array}\right]$
*) consecutive horizontal dots cannot be printed.
Example: box $8 \times 8$ dots with center point $2 \times 2$ dots, standard density, 8 dots / column hex: 1B 2A 000800 FF 818199998181 FF

## Table 7 (Cont.): Further Control Sequences, supported by

IBM Emulation Mode (Native Commands)

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1; P2 w | SNVCT | Set National Version and Code Table P1 = 1-15 national version depending on selected character set (see Appendix C Char. Set Tables) P2 = 3 digit code of the code table (see command SCT) <br> P1 for national version IBM SET 2: <br> P1 = $1 \quad$ : U.S.A <br> P1 = $2 \quad$ : France <br> P1 = $3 \quad$ : Germany <br> P1 = 4 : U.K. <br> P1 = 5 : Denmark <br> P1 $=6 \quad$ : Sweden <br> P1 = $7 \quad$ : Italy <br> P1 = 8 : Spain <br> P1 = 9 : Japan <br> P1 = 10 : Norway <br> P1 = 11 : Denmark 2 <br> $\mathrm{P} 1=12$ : Spain 2 <br> P1 = 13 : Latin AM <br> P1 = 14 : Turkey |
|  |  | P1 for IBM CODE PAGE: |
| ESC [ P P2 w | SCT | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Set Code Table } \\ & \text { P2 }=3 \text { digit code of the code table } \\ & \text { P2 }=031: \text { ISO } 8859 / 1 ; \text { ECMA } 94 \\ & \text { P2 }=032: \text { ISO } 8859 / 15 \\ & \text { P2 }=061: \text { IBM Set } 1 \\ & \text { P2 }=062: \text { IBM Set } 2 \\ & \text { P2 }=063: \text { IBM Code Page }{ }^{1)} \\ & \text { P2 }=071 \text { : EPSON Ext. G. C. T } \end{aligned}$ |

1) depending on selected character set (P1) the IBM CODE PAGE 437, 850, 860 863,865 , or 858 will be activated!

Table 7 (Cont.): Further Control Sequences, supported by
IBM Emulation Mode (Native Commands)

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1; P2 SPr | SM \# | Select Macro and Change Emulation $\begin{aligned} & \text { P1 }=1: \text { Macro } 1 \\ & \text { P1 }=2: \text { Macro } 2 \\ & \text { P1 }=3: \text { Macro } 3 \\ & \text { P1 }=4: \text { Macro } 4 \\ & \text { P2 }=0: \text { no change of emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=1: \text { GP Emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=2: \text { IBM ProPrinter Emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=3: \text { IBM ProPrinter AGM Emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=4: \text { EPSON Emulation } \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC M | RLF | Reverse Line Feed |
| ESC [ < s | EJF | Eject Form |
| ESC [ P1; P2 SPB | GSM | Graphic Size Modification <br> P1 = 100 : normal height <br> P1 = 200 : double height <br> P1 = 300 : triple height <br> P1 = 400 : quadruple height <br> $P 1=$ max. 800 in steps of 100 <br> P2 = 100 : normal width <br> P2 = 200 : double width <br> P2 = 300 : triple width <br> P2 = 400 : quadruple width <br> P2 = max. 800 in steps of 100 |
|  | Graphic Si | e Modification for DATA LARGE <br> P1 = 100 : normal height <br> $P 2=100$ : normal width <br> P1 and P2 max. 9900 in steps of 100 |
| ESC [P1 | HPA | Set Horizontal Position Absolute P1 = print column (P1 = 0...9999) |

Table 7 (Cont.): Further Control Sequences, supported by
IBM Emulation Mode (Native Commands)

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1 a | HPR | Set Horizontal Position Relative <br> P1 = print column <br> (P1 = 0...9999) |
| ESC [ P1 b | RPT | Repeat Character <br> $\mathrm{P} 1=$ number of repetitions $\quad(\mathrm{P} 1=1 \ldots 999)$ |
| ESC [ P1 d | VPA | Set Vertical Position Absolute <br> P1 = 0 or 1: Top of Form / Top Margin <br> P1 = 2... 9999: Vertical Line |
| ESC [P1 e | VPR | Set Vertical Position Relative <br> P1 = 0 or 1: moves the position one line P1 = 2... 9999: Vertical Line |
| ESC [P1g | TBC | Tabulation Clear  <br> P1 $=0:$ at active print pos. all tabs <br> and margin marker, <br> $\mathrm{P} 1=3:$ all horizontal-, <br> P1 $=4:$ <br>  all vertical tabs and margin <br> marker |
| ESC [ P1 w | SNV | Set National Version P1 = 1-14 national version depending on selected character set (see SNVCT and Appendix C Character Set Tables) |
| ESC [ P1 \{ | LSL | Line Space Load $\begin{aligned} \mathrm{P} 1= & 1,2,3,4,6,8,12,16,24, \\ & 48,60,72,90,144,180, \\ & 360 \end{aligned}$ |

## Table 7 (Cont.): Further Control Sequences, supported by

IBM Emulation Mode (Native Commands)
Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

| ESC [ P1 m | SGR | Set Graphic Rendition |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0$ : | default - no rendition or rendition reset |
|  |  | $P 1=1:$ | bold |
|  |  | P1 = 3: | italics |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=4$ : | underline |
|  |  | $P 1=9:$ | crossed out or strike through printing |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=20:$ | enlarged double width printing |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=21:$ | double underline |
|  |  | P 1 = 22: | bold reset |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=23$ : | italics reset |
|  |  | P 1 = 24: | underline reset |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=29$ : | crossed out reset |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=30$ : | black *) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=31:$ | orange *) |
|  |  | P 1 = 32: | green *) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=33:$ | yellow *) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=34$ : | purple *) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=35:$ | magenta (red) *) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=36:$ | cyan (blue) *) |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=53$ : | over lined |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=55$ : | over lined reset |

[^7]
## Table 7 (Cont.): Further Control Sequences, supported by

IBM Emulation Mode (Native Commands)

Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

```
ESC [ ; P2 ; P3 ; P4 ; P5 ; P6 ; P7 SP
see Appendix G BH Barcode Header
BARCODE Programming P2: Barcode typ
P3: Height of barcode
P4: Width of the thin bars
P5: Width of the thin gaps
P6: Ratio width to thin
P7: Uni-directional or bi-directional
    printing
    0: or not programmed: means no
        changes
    1: uni-directional printing in LQ
    2: bi-directional printing in LQ
    3: uni-directional printing in NLQ
    4: bi-directional printing in NLQ
```

A switch from uni-directional to bidirectional printing is only possible if the parameter UNI-DIRECT.CMD is set to YES via operator panel or ESC-sequence.

| ESC [ ? 0 h | SMBC | Set Mode Barcode |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ESC [ ? 0 l | RSBC | Reset Mode Barcode |


| Hex Code | Format | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 | Null | E-3 |
| 08 | Backspace | E-3 |
| 09 | Horizontal Tab | E-3 |
| OA | Line Feed | E-3 |
| OB | Vertical Tab | E-3 |
| OC | Form Feed | E-3 |
| OD | Carriage Return | E-3 |
| OE | Select Double Width (one line) | E-3 |
| OF | Select Condensed Mode (17,1 cpi) | E-3 |
| 11 | Select Printer | E-3 |
| 12 | Select Pica (10 cpi) | E-3 |
| 13 | Buffer Data Flow Control | E-3 |
| 14 | Cancel Double Width | E-3 |
| 18 | Cancel Buffer | E-3 |
| 1B | Escape | E-3 |
| 20 | Space | E-3 |
| 7 F | Delete | E-3 |
| 1B 30 | Set Line Space to $1 / 8{ }^{\prime \prime}$ | E-4 |
| 1B 31 | Set Line Space to ${ }^{7} / 72$ " | E-4 |
| 1B 32 | Start Variable Line Space | E-4 |
| 1B 34 | Set Top Of Form | E-4 |
| 1B 36 | Select Character Set 2 | E-11 |
| 1B 37 | Select CHaracter Set 1 | E-11 |
| 1B 3A | Select Elite (12 cpi) | E-7 |
| 1B 3B | Set Left Margin at Current | E-9 |
| 1B 3C | Home Position of Printhead | E-9 |
| 1B 45 | Select Emphasized (bold) | E-8 |
| 1B 46 | Cancel Emphasized | E-8 |
| 1B 47 | Select Double Strike (bold) | E-8 |
| 1B 48 | Cancel Double Strike | E-8 |
| 1B 4D | Reverse Line Feed | E-16 |
| 1B 4F | Cancel Automatic Perforation Skip | E-4 |
| 1B 52 | Restore Horizontal Tabs to Default | E-8 |


| Hex Code | Format | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1B 54 | Cancel Superscript/Subscript | E-8 |
| 1B 5D | Reverse Line Feed | E-5 |
| 1B6A | Set Printer Off Line | E-3 |
| 2424 | Control String Introducer for ESC [ | E-14 |
| 2424 2F | Control String Introducer for ESC | E-14 |
| 1B 2D $00 / 1$ 1 2D 01 | Cancel / Select / Underline | E-7 |
| 1B $33 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Set Line Space to ${ }^{\text {P1/ } / 216 \text { " }}$ ( ${ }^{\left.\text {1 } / 1800^{\prime \prime}\right)}$ | E-12 |
| 1B $3501 / 1 \mathrm{l} 3500$ | Automatic Line Feed ON/OFF | E-4 |
| 1B $41 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Set Line Space to ${ }^{\text {P1/ } / 72}$ " ( ${ }^{\text {P1/60 }}$ ") | E-4 |
| 1B 4200 | Clear all Vertical Tabs | E-4 |
| 1B $43 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Set Form Length in Lines | E-4 |
| 1B 4400 | Clear all Horizontal Tabs | E-7 |
| 1B $49 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Select Character Mode | E-8 |
| 1B 4A P ${ }_{1}$ | Perform ${ }^{\text {P1/ } / 216 " ~}{ }^{\text {P } 1 / 180}{ }^{\text {\% }}$ ) Line feed | E-12 |
| 1B 4E P ${ }_{1}$ | Set Skip Over Perforation | E-4 |
| 1B5000 / 1B50 01 | Cancel / Select Proportional | E-8 |
| 1B5123 or 1B5124 | Deselect Printer | E-3 |
| 1B $5300 \quad / \quad 1 \mathrm{~B} 5301$ | Select Superscript / Subscipt | E-8 |
| 1B 5500 / 1B 5501 | Cancel / Select Unidirectional Printing | E-8 |
| 1B 5700 / 1B 5701 | Cancel / Select Double Width | E-9 |
| 1B 5E P ${ }_{1}$ | Single Character from All Char. Set | E-11 |
| 1B 5F $00 / 1$ 1B 5F 01 | Cancel / Select Overline | E-7 |
| 1B 2A $P_{1} P_{2} P_{3}$ data | Select Various Graphics Modes | E-14 |
| 1B $42 \mathrm{P}_{1} \ldots . \mathrm{P}_{64} 00$ | Set Vertical Tabs | E-4 |
| 1B $4300 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Set Form Lenght in Inches | E-4 |
| 1B $44 \mathrm{P}_{1} \ldots \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{n}} 00$ | Set Horizontal Tabs | E-7 |
| 1B 4B $\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ data | Standard Density Graphics Mode | E-12 |
| 1B 4C P ${ }_{1} P_{2}$ data | Double Density Graphics Mode | E-12 |
| 1B58 $\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Set Left and Right Margins | E-9 |
| 1B $59 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ data | Double Speed \& Double Density Graphics Mode | E-12 |
| 1B 5A P ${ }_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ data | Quadruple density Graphics Mode | E-12 |
| 1B 5B 3B P 73 | AGC / PCC Procedure | E-5 |


| Hex Code | Format | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1B 5B 3B P 77 | Set Code Table | E-15 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1B 5B 3B } P_{2} 3 B P_{3} 3 B P_{4} 3 B P_{5} 3 B \\ & P_{6} 3 B P_{7} 207 A \end{aligned}$ | Barcode Header | E-20 |
| 1B 5B 3C 73 | Eject Form | E-16 |
| 1B 5B 3E 73 | Insert Form | E-5 |
| 1B 5B 3E $\mathrm{P}_{1} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{2} 3$ B $\mathrm{P}_{3} 3$ B $\mathrm{P}_{4} 73$ | Select Paper Source and Insert Form | E-5 |
| 1B 5B 3F 3068 | Set Mode Barcode | E-20 |
| 1B 5B 3F 30 6C | Reset Mode Barcode | E-20 |
| 1B 5B $4004000000 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Double, Multible -Width/-Height Mode | E-7 |
| 1B 5B $54 \mathrm{n}_{1} \mathrm{n}_{2}$ NUL NUL $\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Code Page Switching | E-11 |
| 1B 5B 5C $04000000 \mathrm{P}_{1} 00$ | Select Line Space Unit | E-4 |
| 1B 5B $67 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ data | Select Various Graphics Modes (IBM) | E-13 |
| 1B 5B P 2058 | Select Print Quality LQ / NLQ | E-9 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1}$ 3B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 2072$ | Select Macro and Change Emulation | E-16 |
| 1B 5B $P_{1} 3 B P_{2} 2042$ | Graphic Size Modification | E-16 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 3 \mathrm{BP}_{2} 77$ | Set National Version and Code Table | E-15 |
| 1B 5B $\mathrm{P}_{1} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{2} 78$ | Select Font and Character Pitch | E-10 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 60$ | Set Horizontal Position Absolute | E-16 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 61$ | Set Horizontal Position Relative | E-17 |
| 1B5B P ${ }_{1} 62$ | Repeat Character | E-17 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 64$ | Set Vertical Position Absolute | E-17 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 65$ | Set Vertical Position Relative | E-17 |
| 1B 5B P 67 | Tabulation Clear | E-17 |
| 1B 5B P $\mathrm{P}_{1} 6 \mathrm{D}$ | Set Graphic Rendition | E-18 |
| $1 \mathrm{~B} 5 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P} \mathrm{P}_{1} 73$ | Select Paper Source | E-5 |
| 1B 5B P 77 | Set National Version | E-17 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 7 \mathrm{~B}$ | Line Space Load | E-17 |
| 1B5C P ${ }_{1} P_{2}$ | Print from All Character Set | E-11 |
| 1B $64 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Set Relative Horizontal Dot Position | E-9 |


|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | c | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | 16 | 32 | 48 | 64 | 80 | 96 | 112 | 128 | 144 | 160 | 176 | 192 | 208 | 224 | 240 |
| 1 | 1 | 17 | 33 | 49 | 65 | 81 | 97 | 113 | 129 | 145 | 161 | 177 | 193 | 209 | 225 | 241 |
| 2 | 2 | 18 | 34 | 50 | 66 | 82 | 98 | 114 | 130 | 146 | 162 | 178 | 194 | 210 | 226 | 242 |
| 3 | 3 | 19 | 35 | 51 | 67 | 83 | 99 | 115 | 131 | 147 | 163 | 179 | 195 | 211 | 227 | 243 |
| 4 | 4 | 20 | 36 | 52 | 68 | 84 | 00 | 116 | 132 | 148 | 164 | 180 | 196 | 212 | 228 | 244 |
| 5 | 5 | 21 | 37 | 53 | 69 | 85 | 01 | 117 | 133 | 149 | 165 | 181 | 197 | 213 | 229 | 245 |
| 6 | 6 | 22 | 38 | 54 | 70 | 86 | 02 | 118 | 134 | 150 | 166 | 182 | 198 | 214 | 230 | 246 |
| 7 | 7 | 23 | 39 | 55 | 71 | 87 | 3 | 119 | 135 | 151 | 167 | 183 | 199 | 215 | 231 | 247 |
| 8 | 8 | 24 | 40 | 56 | 72 | 88 | 04 | 120 | 136 | 152 | 168 | 184 | 200 | 216 | 232 | 248 |
| 9 | 9 | 25 | 41 | 57 | 73 | 89 | 05 | 121 | 137 | 153 | 269 | 185 | 201 | 217 | 233 | 249 |
| A | 10 | 26 | 42 | 58 | 74 | 90 | 06 | 122 | 138 | 154 | 170 | 186 | 202 | 218 | 234 | 250 |
| B | 11 | 27 | 43 | 59 | 75 | 91 | 07 | 123 | 139 | 155 | 171 | 187 | 203 | 219 | 235 | 251 |
| c | 12 | 28 | 44 | 60 | 76 | 92 | 08 | 124 | 140 | 156 | 172 | 188 | 204 | 220 | 236 | 252 |
| D | 13 | 29 | 45 | 61 | 77 | 93 | 09 | 125 | 141 | 157 | 173 | 189 | 205 | 221 | 237 | 253 |
| E | 14 | 30 | 46 | 62 | 78 | 94 | 10 | 126 | 142 | 158 | 174 | 190 | 206 | 222 | 238 | 254 |
| F | 15 | 31 | 47 | 63 | 79 | 95 | 111 | 127 | 143 | 159 | 175 | 191 | 207 | 223 | 239 | 255 |

## Appendix F EPSON LQ 2550 and ESC/P2 Quick Reference

This appendix contains basic information on the EPSON LQ 2550 Printer Emulation commands supported in three Printer types:


## PRINTER TYPE 2

## PRINTER TYPE 3

Some commands or parameters may be different for a specific PRINTER TYPE. In those cases it will be indicated to which PRINTER TYPE a command or parameter applies.

Characters used in control functions appear in monospaced type. Table 1 explains some of the conventions used

A pair of numbers separated by a slash ( / ) character indicates Column/Row notation. This notation refers to the location of a character in a standard code table, such as ASCII. (example: $1 / B=1 B$ is the hex-code for Escape)

Spaces appear between characters in sequence for clarity; they are not part of the format.

At the end of this chapter you will find a listing of the EPSON LQ 2550 Emulation commands classified by Hex Code and a Hex - Decimal conversion table.

The following conventions are used in the command listings:

Table 1 Conventions

ESC Escape (1/B), introduces an escape sequence
P1 Numeric parameter, or number of units that specify a distance or quantity pertaining to the escape sequence, control function or control string. Accepted values are 0...9999, may be preceded by + or - . If the parameter is in normal notation like "200" the programming in hex-code is according to a ASCII table. ("200" = 32,30,30 in hex). If the parameter must be programmed in hex-code the notation is with a slash. ( $1 / \mathrm{A}=1 \mathrm{~A}$ in hex-code)
v1...vn A series of parameters pertaining to the escape sequence, control function or control string.

SP Is standing for Space (hex 20)

## Table B-2: Control Codes

|  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Column/Row | Mnemonic | Function |
|  |  |  |
| $0 / 0$ | NUL | Null |
| $0 / 8$ | BS | Backspace |
| 0/9 | HT | Horizontal Tab |
| 0/A | LF | Line Feed |
| 0/B | VT | Vertical Tab |
| 0/C | FF | Form Feed |
| $0 / D$ | CR | Carriage Return |
| 0/E | SO | Double Width Printing By Line |
| $0 / F$ | SI | Condensed Printing |
| $1 / 1$ | DC1 | Select Printer |
| $1 / 2$ | DC2 | Select Pica (10 cpi) |
| $1 / 3$ | DC3 | Deselct Printer |
| $1 / 4$ | DC4 | Cancel Double Width Printing By Line |
| $1 / 8$ | CAN | Cancel Buffer |
| $1 / B$ | ESC | Initiate Escape Sequence |
| $2 / 0$ | SP | Space |
| $7 / F$ | DEL | Delete |

## Table B-3: Terminal Management

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | Function |
| ESC @ | Initialize Printer |
| ESC $=$ | Set Most Significant Bit to 0 |
| ESC $>$ | Set Most Significant Bit to 1 |
| ESC \# | Cancel Most Significant Bit Control |

Table B-4: Vertical Form Handling

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC 0 | Set Line Space to $1 / 8{ }^{\prime \prime}$ |
| ESC 2 | Set Line Space to $1 / 6{ }^{\prime \prime}$ |
| ESC 3 P1 | Set Line Space to ${ }^{\mathrm{P} 1 / 180^{\prime \prime} \quad(\mathrm{P} 1=0 . .255)}$ |
| $E S C+P 1$ | Set Line Space to ${ }^{\mathrm{P} 1 / 360}{ }^{\prime \prime} \quad(\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F})$ |
| ESC A P1 |  |
| ESC B NUL | Clear Vertical Tabs |
| ESC B P1 P2 . . P16 NUL | Set Vertical Tabs (P1...P16 = 0/1...F/F) |
| ESC C P1 | Set Form Length in Lines ( $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 1 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F})$ |
| ESC C NUL P1 | Set Form Length in Inches ( $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 1 \ldots 0 / \mathrm{C}$ ) |
| ESC J P1 | Perform ${ }^{\text {P1 } / 180} 18$ Line Feed $\quad(\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 0 \ldots \mathrm{~F} / \mathrm{F})$ |
| ESC N P1 | Set Automatic Perforation Skip P 1 is the number of lines from bottom of paper to skip. (P1 = 0/1...7/F) |
| ESC O | Cancel Automatic Perforation Skip |
| ESC b P1 P2 .. P16 NUL | Set Vertical Tabs in Channel P1 <br> P1 = 0/0 .. 0/7 : channel 0-7 <br> $P 2 . . \mathrm{P} 16=$ line number $\quad(P 2 . . \mathrm{P} 16=0 / 1 . . \mathrm{F} / \mathrm{F})$ |
| ESC b P1 NUL | Clear all Tabs in Channel P1 P1 = 0/0.. 0/7: channel 0-7 |
| ESC j P1 | Perform ${ }^{\mathrm{P} 1 / 180 "}$ Reverse Line Feed $(P 1=0 / 0 \ldots F / F)$ |
| ESC / P1 | Select Vertical Tab Channel P1 = 0/0 .. 0/7 : channel $0 . .7$ |

Table B-4: (Cont.) Vertical Form Handling
Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

ESC EMP1

ESC [ > P1; P2; P3; P4s SPSIF
Native Command

ESC [ P1 s
Native Command

ESC [ ; P2 s
Native Command
see also GP Emulation

Form Feed and ASF Control *)
$E M=1 / 9$
P1 = 0/1 or $1:$ ASF Bin 1
P1 = 0/2 or 2: ASF Bin 2
P1 $=0 / 3$ or 3 : ASF Bin 3
$P 1=8 / 2$ or $R$ : $(5 / 2)$ eject sheet
Select Paper Source and Insert
Form, Print Gap, Paper Exit, Cut-Mode (any parameter > or P1 to P4 may be skipped, see following alternative command sequences); > = Insert Form

SPS Paper Source
P1 = $0 \quad$ : Manual Feed **)
P1 = 1 : ASF, Bin $1^{*}$ )
P1 = 2 : ASF, Bin 2 *)
P1 = 3 : ASF, Bin $3^{*}$ )
P1 = 6 : upper Tractor ***)
P1 = $7 \quad$ : Tractor Feed (lower Tractor)
P1 = 8 : ASF, Bins 1 or 2 *)
P1 = 9 : ASF, Bins 2 or $3^{*}$
P1 = 10 : ASF, Bins 1 or 2 or $3^{*}$ )
P1 = 15 : upper and lower tractor ${ }^{* * *}$ )

AGC/PCC Print Gap Control:
P2 $=0$ : Automatic Gap Control
P2 = 1 : Print Gap for 1-ply copy
P2 $=2$ : Print Gap for 2-ply copies
P2 = 3 : Print Gap for 3-ply copies
P2 $=4$ : Print Gap for 4-ply copies
P2 = 5 : Print Gap for 5-ply copies
P2 = 6 : Print Gap for 6-ply copies

[^8]Table B-4: (Cont.) Vertical Form Handling
Escape Sequence Mnemonic Function

ESC [ ; ; P3 s
Native Command

ESC [; ; ; P4 s
Native Command

Paper Exit:
P3 $=0$ : Paper Exit Stacker ${ }^{* * *}$ )
P3 = 1 : Paper Exit Front Side *) (confirmed by Start/Stop key)
P3 = 2 : Paper Exit Front Side *) (not confirmed by Start/Stop key, controlled by application)
P3 = 3: Batch output; rear side

Cut Mode On/Off: ****)
P4 = 0 : Cut Mode Of
P4 = 1: Cut Mode On
P4 = 2 : Cut on actual position
(cutting edge is approximate 4 mm above the base of the actual line)

## Table B-5: Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC SO | Select Double Width for One Line |
| ESC SI | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Select Condensed } \\ & 10 \mathrm{cpi}->17 \mathrm{cpi} \\ & 12 \mathrm{cpi}->20 \mathrm{cpi} \\ & 15 \mathrm{cpi}->15 \mathrm{cpi} \text { (unchanged) } \\ & \text { proportional }->\text { proportional cond. } \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC SPP1 | Select Intercharacter Space <br> Unit $1 / 120^{\prime \prime}$ for DRAFT $(P 1=0 / 0 \ldots 7 / F)$ $\text { Unit } 1 / 180 \text { " for NLQ/LQ } \quad(P 1=0 / 0 \ldots 7 / F)$ |
| ESC ! P1 | Select Multiple Print Mode P1 selects: <br> Bit0 $=0$ : 10 cpi (Pica) <br> Bit0 $=1: 12 \mathrm{cpi}$ (Elite) <br> Bit1 $=1$ : proportional <br> Bit2 $=1:$ Condensed <br> Bit3 $=1$ : Emphasized <br> Bit $4=1$ : Double Strike <br> Bit5 = 1 : Double Width <br> Bit6 $=1$ : Italics <br> Bit7 = 1 : Underline |
| ESC \$ P1 P2 | Set Absolute Horizontal Position $\begin{array}{ll} (P 1+P 2 * 256) * 1 / 60 " & (P 1=0 / 0 \ldots F / F) \\ & (P 2=0 / 0 \ldots 0 / 3) \end{array}$ |
| ESC $\backslash$ P1 P2 |  |
| ESC \% P1 | Select Standard / User Defined Character <br> Set <br> P1 = 0/0: Standard Character Set <br> P1 $=0 / 1$ : User Defined Character Set |

## Table B-5 (Cont.): Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC \& NUL P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 v1 .. vn | Define User Defined Characters |
|  | P1 = first code table position |
|  | $(P 1=0 / 0 \ldots P 2)$ |
|  | P2 = last code table position |
|  | ( $\mathrm{P} 2=\mathrm{P} 1 . . .7 / \mathrm{F}$ ) |
|  | $P 3=$ front space $\quad(P 3=0 / 0 \ldots 5 / 0)$ |
|  | $P 4=$ body length $\quad$ Draft: $(P 4=0 / 0 \ldots 0 / F)$ |
|  | LQ: (P4 = 0/0...2/5) |
|  | $P 5=$ rear space $\quad(P 5=0 / 0 \ldots 5 / 0)$ |
|  | $\mathrm{v} 1 . . \mathrm{vn}=$ binary data in hex |
|  | $(v n=0 / 0 \ldots F / F)$ |

Notes: - This Command defines one or more characters in a RAM character table.

- All User Defined Characters are erased when the printer is switched off.
- Set the Interface Buffer to 1 k or 8 K (max 50 defined char in LQ, 128 in draft), or use a RAM card for up to 128 User Defined Characters in LQ.
Set maximum every second dot to "1" in a horizontal line !
- User Defined Characters can be defined in four different print modes:
resolution (vertical $x$ horizontal)

| Normal Size with Draft: | $24 \times 15$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Normal Size with LQ / proport.: | $24 \times 37$ |
| Sub-/ Superscript with Draft: | $16 \times 15$ |
| Sub-/ Superscript with LQ / proport.: | $16 \times 37$ |

Sub-/ Superscript with LQ / proport.: $16 \times 37$

- The characters can only be activated in the same mode as defined.
- The character layout is coded in three bytes ( 24 bit vertical) or two bytes (16 bit vertical) per column, top to bottom.
To print the character change to the User Defined Character Set with ESC \% .

Examıpe: vertical box, normal size with draft at code table position "41" ( $\mathrm{P} 3=8, \mathrm{P} 4=5, \mathrm{P} 5=8$ )
hex: 1B 26004141080508 FF FF FF 000000800001000000 FF FF FF

Table B-5: (Cont.) Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC ( - P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 | Select Line Marking |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 3$ (fixed value) |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 2=0 / 0 \quad$ (fixed value) |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 3=0 / 1 \quad$ (fixed value) |
|  | P4 $=0 / 1$ : underline |
|  | P4 $=0 / 2$ : strike through |
|  | P4 $=0 / 3$ : overscore |
|  | P5 = 0/0 : cancel score line selected by P4 |
|  | P5 = 0/1 : single continuous line |
|  | P5 $=0 / 2$ : double continuous line |
|  | P5 = 0/5 : single broken line |
|  | P5 = 0/6 : double broken line |
| ESC 4 | Set Italics |
| ESC 5 | Cancel Italics |
| ESC < | Select Unidirectional Mode (one line) |
| ESC : NUL P1 NUL | Copy ROM Character Set to RAM |
|  | P1 = 0/0 : S. ROMAN |
|  | P1 = 0/1: L. GOTHIC |
|  | P1 = 0/2: COURIER |
|  | P1 = 0/3: PRESTIGE |
|  | P1 $=0 / 4$ : SCRIPT |
|  | P1 = 0/5: OCR-B |
|  | P1 = 0/6: OCR-A |
|  | P1 $=0 / 7$ : ORATOR-C |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 8$ : ORATOR |
| ESC - P1 | Underline Printing |
|  | P1 = 0/1 : set Underline Printing |
|  | P1 = 0/0 : cancel Underline Printing |
| ESC D NUL | Clear Horizontal Tabs |

Table B-5: (Cont.) Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC D P1 P2 . . P32 NUL | Set Horizontal Tabs $\mathrm{P} 1 \ldots \mathrm{P} 32=\text { tab position } \quad(\mathrm{Pn}=0 / 1 . . \mathrm{F} / \mathrm{F})$ |
| ESC E | Select Emphasized Printing (bold) |
| ESC F | Cancel Emphasized Printing |
| ESC G | Select Double Strike Printing (bold) |
| ESC H | Cancel Double Strike Printing |
| ESC M | Select Elite (12 cpi) |
| ESC P | Select Pica (10 cpi) |
| ESC Q P1 |  |
| ESC S P1 | Select Superscript/Subscript P1 $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : select Superscript P1 $=0 / 1$ or $3 / 1$ : select Subscript |
| ESC T | Cancel Superscript/Subscript |
| ESC U P1 | Cancel/Select Unidirectional Printing P1 $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : cancel Unidirectional P1 $=0 / 1$ or $3 / 1$ : select Unidirectional |
| ESC W P1 | Cancel/Select Double Width <br> P1 $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : cancel Double Width <br> P1 $=0 / 1$ or $3 / 1$ : select Double Width |
| ESC a P1 | Select Justification <br> P1 $=0 / 0$ : select left justification <br> P1 = 0/1: center between margins <br> P1 $=0 / 2$ : select right justification <br> $P 1=0 / 3$ : select full justification |

Table B-5: (Cont.) Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC g | Select Pitch 15 cpi |
| ESC k P1 | Select Font |
|  | P1 = 0/0 : S. ROMAN |
|  | P1 $=0 / 1$ : L. GOTHIC |
|  | P1 = 0/2 : COURIER |
|  | P1 $=0 / 3$ : PRESTIGE |
|  | P1 $=0 / 4$ : SCRIPT |
|  | P1 $=0 / 5$ : OCR-B |
|  | P1 = 0/6: OCR-A |
|  | P1 $=0 / 7$ : ORATOR-C |
|  | P1 $=0 / 8$ : ORATOR |
|  | P1 $=1 / 0$ : DATA BLOCK |
|  | P1 = 1/1 : DATA LARGE |
| ESC 1 P1 | Set Left Margin (P1 = 0/0...F/C) |
| ESC p P1 | Cancel/Select Proportional |
|  | P1 $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : cancel proportional |
|  | P1 = 0/1 or 3/1 : select proportional |
| ESC q P1 | Select Character Style |
|  | P1 = 0/0 : normal style |
|  | P1 $=0 / 1$ : outline |
|  | P1 = 0/2 : shadow |
|  | P1 = 0/3 : outline + shadow |
| ESC r P1 | Select Printing Colour *) |
|  | P1 = 0/0 : Black |
|  | P1 $=0 / 1$ : Magenta |
|  | P1 = 0/2: Cyan |
|  | P1 $=0 / 3$ : Violet |
|  | P1 = 0/4: Yellow |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 5$ : Red |
|  | P1 = 0/6: Green |

Table B-5: (Cont.) Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC w P1 |  | Cancel/Select Double Height |
|  |  | P1 $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : cancel |
|  |  | P1 $=0 / 1$ or $3 / 1$ : select |
| ESC $\times$ P1 |  | Select Character Quality |
|  |  | P1 $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : select Draft |
|  |  | P1 $=0 / 1$ or $3 / 1$ : select LQ or |
|  |  | NLQ dep. on set-up |
| ESC [ P1 ; P2 SPB | GSM | Graphic Size Modification |
| Native Command, |  | P1 = 100 : normal height |
| see also GP Emulation |  | P1 = 200 : double height |
|  |  | P1 = 300 : triple height |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=400$ : quadruple height |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 1=$ max. 800 in steps of 100 |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 2=100$ : normal width |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 2=200$ : double width |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 2=300$ : triple width |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 2=400$ : quadruple width |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 2=\mathrm{max} .800$ in steps of 100 |
|  | Graphic Siz | e Modification for DATA LARGE |
|  |  | P1 = 100 : normal height |
|  |  | $\mathrm{P} 2=100$ : normal width |
|  |  | P1 and P2 max. 9900 in steps of 100 |

[^9]
## Table B-5: (Cont.) Horizontal Form Handling and Printing Modes



## Table B-6: Graphics Modes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC ? K P1 | Reassign Graphics Mode K ${ }^{1)}$ |
|  | Standard Density, 8 dpc |
| ESC ? L P1 | Reassign Graphics Mode L ${ }^{1)}$ |
|  | Double Density, 8 dot per column |
| ESC ? Y P1 | Reassign Graphics Mode $Y^{1)}$ |
|  | Double Density \& -Speed, 8 dot per col. |
| ESC ? Z P1 | Reassign Graphics Mode $\mathrm{Z}^{1)}$ |
|  | Quadruple Density, 8 dot per column |
| ESC K P2 P3 v1 . . vn | Standard Density Graphics Mode ${ }^{1)}$ |
| ESC L P2 P3 v1 . . vn | Double Density Graphics Mode ${ }^{1)}$ |
| ESC Y P2 P3 v1 . . vn | Double Density / Double Speed Graphics Mode ${ }^{1)}$ |
| ESC Z P2 P3 v1 . . vn | Quadruple Density Graphics Mode ${ }^{1)}$ |
| ${ }^{1)}$ : for coding of P1, P2, P3 see ESC * on the next page |  |

## Table B-6: Graphics Modes



Appendix F EPSON LQ 2550 and ESC/P2 Quick Reference

## Table B-7: Character Set Selection

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC 6 | Enlarge Print Code Area (128-159 dec.) |
| ESC 7 | Enable Upper Control Code (128-159 dec.) |
| ESC R P1 | Select National Version |
|  | P1 = 0/0 : U.S.A. |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 1$ : FRANCE |
|  | P1 $=0 / 2$ : GERMANY |
|  | P1 $=0 / 3$ : U.K. |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 4$ : DENMARK |
|  | P1 $=0 / 5$ : SWEDEN |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 6$ : ITALY |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / 7$ : SPAIN |
|  | P1 $=0 / 8$ : JAPAN |
|  | P1 = 0/9 : NORWAY |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / \mathrm{A}$ : DENMARK 2 |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / \mathrm{B}$ : SPAIN 2 |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0 / \mathrm{C}$ : LATIN AM. |
|  | P1 = 0/D : TURKEY |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=4 / 0$ : LEGAL |
| ESC t P1 | Select Character Table |
|  | P1 = 0/0 : Italics Character Table |
|  | P1 $=0 / 1$ : Extended Graphics Character Table |
|  | P1 = 0/2 : User Defined Character Table |

## Table B-8: Further GP - Control Sequences, supported by

EPSON LQ Emulation Mode (Native Commands)

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ | \$\$ | Control String Introducer (CSI) for ESC [ |
| ESC | \$\$/ | control String Introducer for ESC |
| ESC [ < s | EJF | Eject Form |
| ESC [ > s | IF | Insert Form |
| ESC [P1 SP X | SPQ | Select Print Quality $\begin{array}{ll} P 1=0: & L Q \\ P 1=1: & \\ \text { NLQ } \end{array}$ |
| ESC [ P1; P2 SPr | SM \# | Select Macro and Change Emulation $\begin{aligned} & \text { P1 }=1: \text { Macro } 1 \\ & \text { P1 }=2: \text { Macro } 2 \\ & \text { P1 }=3: \text { Macro } 3 \\ & \text { P1 }=4: \text { Macro } 4 \\ & \text { P2 }=0: \text { no change of emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=1: \text { GP Emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=2: \text { IBM ProPrinter Emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=3: \text { IBM ProPrinter AGM Emulation } \\ & \text { P2 }=4: \text { EPSON Emulation } \end{aligned}$ |

Table B-8 (Cont.): Further GP - Control Sequences, supported by

| Escape Sequence | Mnemonic | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESC [ P1; P2 w | SNVCT | Set National Version and Code Table P1 = 1-15 national version depending on selected character set (see Appendix C Char. Set Tables) P2 = 3 digit code of the code table (see command SCT below) <br> P1 for national version EPSON EXT. GCT: |
| ESC [ P1 w | SNV | Set National Version P1 = 1-15 national version depending on selected character set (see command SNVCT above) |
| ESC [ ; P2 w | SCT | Set Code Table P2 = 3 digit code of the code table $\begin{aligned} & \text { P2 }=031: \text { ISO 8859/1; ECMA } 94 \\ & \text { P2 }=032: \text { ISO 8859/15 } \\ & \text { P2 }=061: \text { IBM Set } 1 \\ & \text { P2 }=062: \text { IBM Set } 2 \\ & \text { P2 }=063: \text { IBM Code Page }{ }^{1} \text { ) } \\ & \text { P2 }=071: \text { EPSON Ext. G. C. } \text { T } \end{aligned}$ |

1) depending on selected character set (P1 in SNV) the IBM CODE PAGE 437, 850 $860,863,865$, or 858 will be activated!

Table B-8 (Cont.): Further GP - Control Sequences, supported by
EPSON LQ Emulation Mode (Native Commands)


Table 9: ESC / P2 Commands

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC ( c P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 | Set page format |
|  | Sets top and bottom margins in the defined units. $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P} 1=0400 \\ & \mathrm{tm}=\mathrm{P} 2+\mathrm{P} 3 \times 256 \end{aligned}$ <br> tm: top margin in units tm $\mathrm{bm}=\mathrm{P} 4+\mathrm{P} 5 \times 256$ <br> bm: bottom margin in units bm |
| ESC ( C P1 P2 P3 | Set page length in defined unit |
|  | Define page length in units $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P} 1=0200 \\ & \mathrm{pl}=\mathrm{P} 2+\mathrm{P} 3 \times 256 \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC ( V P1 P2 P3 | Set absolute vertical print position |

Define absolute vertical print position in units
P1 = 0200
avpp $=$ P2 + P3 x 256
avpp: define print position from top margin in defined units

## Set relative vertical print position

Define relative vertical print position in units
$\mathrm{P} 1=0200$
vpp $=$ P2 + P3 x 256
vpp: moves the print position in defined units.

Table 9: (Cont.) ESC / P2 Commands

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC X P1 P2 P3 | Select font by pitch and point |
|  | P1 = 0: No change in pitch |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=1$ : Selects proportional spacing |
|  | $\begin{aligned} \mathrm{P} 1= & 18,24,30,36,42,48,60 \text { or } 72 \\ & \text { Selects fixed pitch equal to } \\ & 360 / \mathrm{m} \text { cpi } \end{aligned}$ |
|  | $\mathrm{pz}=\mathrm{P} 2+\mathrm{P} 3 \times 256$ |
|  | pz: Point size in 0,5 points; 1 point equals $1 / 72$ inch |
|  | $p z=0: \quad$ No change in point size |
|  | $\begin{aligned} \mathrm{pz}= & 16,20,21,24,28,32,36,40,42, \\ & 44,48,52,56,60,64 \end{aligned}$ |
| ESC ( U P1 P2 | Set unit |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 1=0100$ |
|  | $\mathrm{P} 2=10,20,30,40,50,60 / 3600 "$ |
|  | P2 = 10; Standard |

## Set horizontal motion index (HMI)

Define HMI-Index
Change pitch value in $\mathrm{n} / 360$ "-steps
$\mathrm{HMI}=\mathrm{P} 1+\mathrm{P} 2 \times 256$
HMI max. 3 inch

Table 9: (Cont.) ESC / P2 Commands

| Escape Sequence | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| ESC (tn1 n2 Pn P1 P2 | Assign character table |
|  | $\mathrm{n} 1=3, \mathrm{n} 2=0$ |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Pn }=\begin{array}{l} \text { Parameter of ESC } t: 0,1,2,3, \\ \text { "0", "1", "2" or "3" } \end{array} \end{aligned}$ |
|  | P1 P2 = character table |
|  | 0 0: italic |
|  | 10 : PC 437 (USA) |
|  | 3 0: PC 850 (Multilingual) |
|  | 7 0: PC 860 (Portugal) |
|  | 8 0: PC 863 (French-Canada) |
|  | 9 0: PC 865 (Norway) |
|  | 29 15: ISO 8859-15 |
|  | 29 16: ISO 8859-1 |
|  | 44 0: PC 858 (Multilingual + Euro) |

The character table assigned by Pn is one of the four tables which will be selected by the ESC t command.

## Select character table

Selects the character table to be used for printing from among the four character tables which are assigned by ESC ( t command.
Pn $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : Character Table 0
Pn $=0 / 1$ or $3 / 1:$ Character Table 1
Pn = 0/2 or 3/2 : Character Table 2
Re-maps downloaded Characters from the positions 0 to 127 to the positions 128 to 255 .
Pn $=0 / 3$ or $3 / 3$ : Character Table 3

## Default Setting

Pn $=0 / 0$ or $3 / 0$ : Italics Character Table
$\mathrm{Pn}=0 / 1$ or $3 / 1: ~ C P 437$
Pn $=0 / 2$ or $3 / 2$ : User Defined Character Table
Pn = 0/3 or $3 / 3: \quad$ CP 437

## Table 9: (Cont.) ESC / P2 Commands

Escape Sequence Function

ESC ( ^ P1 P2

## Print data as characters

Prints n data bytes as characters, not control codes
pd = P1 + P2 x 256

ESC ( G P1 P2

## Select graphics mode

P1 = 0100
P2 = 1 or 49
Graphics mode may be reset by ESC @

## ESC . P1 P2 P 3 P4 P5 P6 Print raster graphics

P1 = 0 : graphics mode non compressed
P1 = 1: graphics mode compressed $P 2=10,20:$ vertical resolution in 3600/v DPI
$P 3=10,20$ : horizontal resolution in 3600/h DPI
P4: vertical dot count (rows of dot graphics) $1<$ P4 < 24
hzd : horizont dot count (columns of dot graphics)
$h z d=P 5+P 6 \times 256$
Combination $\mathrm{P} 2=10, \mathrm{P} 3=20$ is no possible.

| Hex Code | Format | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 | Null | F-3 |
| 08 | Backspace | F-3 |
| 09 | Horizontal Tab | F-3 |
| OA | Line Feed | F-3 |
| OB | Vertical Tab | F-3 |
| OC | Form Feed | F-3 |
| OD | Cariage Return | F-3 |
| 11 | Select Printer | F-3 |
| 12 | Cancel Condensed Mode | F-3 |
| 13 | Deselect Printer | F-3 |
| 14 | Cancel Double Width | F-3 |
| 18 | Cancel Buffer | F-3 |
| 1B | Escape | F-3 |
| 20 | Space | F-3 |
| 7F | Delete | F-3 |
| 1B 0E or 0E | Select Double Width for One Line | F-3/7 |
| 1 B 0 F or 0F | Select Condensed Mode | F-3/7 |
| 1B 23 | Cancel Most Significant Bit Control | F-3 |
| 1B 30 | Set Line Space to $1 / 8$ " | F-4 |
| 1B 32 | Set Line Space to $1 / 6$ " | F-4 |
| 1B 34 | Set Italics | F-9 |
| 1B 35 | Cancel Italics | F-9 |
| 1B 36 | Enlarge Print Code Area | F-16 |
| 1B 37 | Enable Upper Control Code Area | F-16 |
| 1B 3C | Select Unidirectional Mode (one line) | F-9 |
| 1B 3D | Set Most Significant Bit to 0 | F-3 |
| 1B 3E | Set Most Significant Bit to 1 | F-3 |
| 1B 40 | Initialize Printer | F-3 |
| 1B 45 | Select Emphasized (bold) | F-10 |
| 1B 46 | Cancel Emphasized | F-10 |


| Hex Code |  | Format | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1B 47 |  | Select Double Strike (bold) | F-10 |
| 1B 48 |  | Cancel Double Strike | F-10 |
| 1B 4D |  | Select Elite (12 cpi) | F-10 |
| 1B 4F |  | Cancel Automatic Perforation Skip | F-4 |
| 1B 50 |  | Select Pica (10 cpi) | F-10 |
| 1B 54 |  | Cancel Superscript/Subscript | F-10 |
| 1B 67 |  | Select Pitch 15 cpi | F-11 |
| 2424 |  | Control String Introducer for ESC [ | F-17 |
| 2424 2F |  | Control String Introducer for ESC | F-17 |
| 1B $19 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Formfeed and ASF Control | F-5 |
| 1B $20 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Select Intercharacter Space | F-7 |
| 1B $21 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Select Multible Print Mode | F-7 |
| 1B2500 / 1B2501 |  | Select Standard- / User Defined Char. Set | F-7 |
| 1B 2B P ${ }_{1}$ |  | Set line Space to ${ }^{\text {P1/ } / 360}{ }^{\text {" }}$ | F-4 |
| 1B 2F P ${ }_{1}$ |  | Select Variable Tab Channel | F-4 |
| 1B 2D 01 | 1B 2D 00 | Select / Cancel Underline | F-9 |
| 1B $33 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Set Line Space to ${ }^{\text {P1/ } / 180}{ }^{\text {" }}$ | F-4 |
| 1B $41 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Set line Space to ${ }^{\text {P1/ } / 60}$ " | F-4 |
| 1B 4200 |  | Clear Vertical Tabs | F-4 |
| 1B $43 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Set Form Length in Lines | F-4 |
| 1B 4400 |  | Clear Horizontal Tabs | F-9 |
| 1B 4A P ${ }_{1}$ |  | Perform ${ }^{\text {P } 1 / 180}$ Line Feed | F-4 |
| 1B 4E P ${ }_{1}$ |  | Set Automatic Perforation Skip | F-4 |
| 1B $51 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Set Right Margin | F-10 |
| 1B $52 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Set National Version | F-16 |
| 1B 5300 | 1B 5301 | Select Superscript / Subscript | F-10 |
| 1B 5500 | 1B 5501 | Cancel / Select Unidirectional Printing | F-10 |
| 1B 5700 | 1B 5701 | Cancel / Select Double Width | F-10 |
| $1 \mathrm{~B} 61 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ |  | Select Justification | F-10 |

Appendix F EPSON LQ 2550 and ESC/P2 Quick Reference

| Hex Code | Format | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1B6A P ${ }_{1}$ | Perform ${ }^{\text {P1 } / 180}$ Reverse Line Feed | F-4 |
| 1B6B P ${ }_{1}$ | Select Font | F-11 |
| 1B6C P ${ }_{1}$ | Set Left Margin | F-11 |
| 1B7000 / 1B70 01 | Cancel / Select Proportional | F-11 |
| 1B $71 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Select Character Style | F-11 |
| 1B $72 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Select Printing Colour | F-11 |
| 1B $74 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Select Character Table | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{F}-16 \\ & \mathrm{~F}-22 \end{aligned}$ |
| 1B 7700 / 1B 7701 | Cancel / Select Double Height | F-12 |
| 1B $78 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Select Character Quality | F-12 |
| 1B $24 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Set Absolute Horizontal Position | F-7 |
| 1B $2600 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3} \mathrm{P}_{4} \mathrm{P}_{5}$ data | Define User Defined Characters | F-8 |
| 1B $282 \mathrm{D} \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3} \mathrm{P}_{4} \mathrm{P}_{5}$ | Select Line Marking | F-9 |
| 1B $2843 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ | Set Page Length in defined Unit | F-20 |
| 1B $2847 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Select Graphics Mode | F-23 |
| 1B $2855 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Set Unit | F-21 |
| 1B $2856 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ | Set absolute vertical Print Position | F-20 |
| 1B $2863 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3} \mathrm{P}_{4} \mathrm{P}_{5}$ | Set Page Format | F-20 |
| 1B $2874 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3} \mathrm{P}_{4}$ | Assign Character Table | F-22 |
| 1B $2876 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ | Set relative vertical Print Position | F-20 |
| 1B 28 5E $\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Print Data as Character | F-23 |
| 1B2A $P_{1} P_{2} P_{3}$ data | Select Various Graphics Modes | F-15 |
| 1B 2E $\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3} \mathrm{P}_{4} \mathrm{P}_{5} \mathrm{P}_{6}$ | Print Raster Graphics | F-23 |
| 1B 3A $00 \mathrm{P}_{1} 00$ | Copy ROM Character Set to RAM | F-9 |
| 1B 3F 4B P ${ }_{1}$ | Reassign Graphics Mode K | F-14 |
| 1B 3F 4C P ${ }_{1}$ | Reassign Graphics Mode L | F-14 |
| 1B 3F $59 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Reassign Graphics Mode Y | F-14 |
| 1B 3F 5A P ${ }_{1}$ | Reassign Graphics Mode Z | F-14 |
| 1B $42 \mathrm{P}_{1} \ldots . \mathrm{P}_{16} 00$ | Set Vertical Tabs | F-4 |
| 1B $4300 \mathrm{P}_{1}$ | Set Form Length in Inches | F-4 |

Appendix F EPSON LQ 2550 and ESC/P2 Quick Reference

| Hex Code | Format | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1B $44 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \ldots \mathrm{P}_{32} 00$ | Set Horizontal Tabs | F-10 |
| 1B 4B $\mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ data | Standard Density Graphics Mode | F-14 |
| 1B 4C P ${ }_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ data | Double Density Graphics Mode | F-14 |
| 1B $58 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ | Select Font by Pitch and Point | F-21 |
| 1B $59 \mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ data | Double Speed \& Double Density Graph. Mode | F-14 |
| 1B 5A P ${ }_{2} \mathrm{P}_{3}$ data | Quadruple Density Graphics Mode | F-14 |
| 1B 5B 3B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 73$ | AGC / PCC Procedure | F-5 |
| 1B 5B 3B P ${ }_{2} 77$ | Set Code Table | F-18 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1B 5B 3B } P_{2} 3 B P_{3} 3 B P_{4} 3 B P_{5} 3 B \\ & P_{6} 3 B P_{7} 207 A \end{aligned}$ | Barcode Printing | F-19 |
| 1B 5B 3C 73 | Eject Form | F-17 |
| 1B 5B 3E 73 | Insert Form | F-17 |
| 1B 5B 3E $\mathrm{P}_{1} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{2} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{3} 3$ B $\mathrm{P}_{4} 73$ | Select Paper Source and Insert Form | F-5 |
| 1B 5B 3F 3068 | Set Mode Barcode | F-19 |
| 1B 5B 3F 30 6C | Reset Mode Barcode | F-19 |
| 1B 5B P 2058 | Select Print Quality | F-17 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1}$ 3B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 2072$ | Select Makro and Change Emulation | F-17 |
| 1B 5B $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ 3B $\mathrm{P}_{2} 2042$ | Graphic Size Modification | F-12 |
| 1B 5B $P_{1} 3 B P_{2} 77$ | Set National Version and Code Table | F-18 |
| 1B 5B P ${ }_{1} 3 \mathrm{BP}_{2} 78$ | Select Font and Character Pitch | F-13 |
| 1B 5B P 77 | Set National Version | F-18 |
| 1B 5C P ${ }_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Set Relative Horizontal Position | F-7 |
| 1B $62 \mathrm{P}_{1} 00$ | Clear Vertical Tabs in Channel $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ | F-4 |
| 1B $62 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{P} \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2} \ldots \mathrm{P}_{9} 00$ | Set Vertical Tab in Channel $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ | F-4 |
| 1B $63 \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ | Set Horizontal Motion Index (HMI) | F-21 |

## Hex - Decimal Conversion Table

|  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | 16 | 32 | 48 | 64 | 80 | 96 | 112 | 128 | 144 | 160 | 176 | 192 | 208 | 224 | 240 |
| 1 | 1 | 17 | 33 | 49 | 65 | 81 | 97 | 113 | 129 | 145 | 161 | 177 | 193 | 209 | 225 | 241 |
| 2 | 2 | 18 | 34 | 50 | 66 | 82 | 98 | 114 | 130 | 146 | 162 | 178 | 194 | 210 | 226 | 242 |
| 3 | 3 | 19 | 35 | 51 | 67 | 83 | 99 | 115 | 131 | 147 | 163 | 179 | 195 | 211 | 227 | 243 |
| 4 | 4 | 20 | 36 | 52 | 68 | 84 | 100 | 116 | 132 | 148 | 164 | 180 | 196 | 212 | 228 | 244 |
| 5 | 5 | 21 | 37 | 53 | 69 | 85 | 101 | 117 | 133 | 149 | 165 | 181 | 197 | 213 | 229 | 245 |
| 6 | 6 | 22 | 38 | 54 | 70 | 86 | 102 | 118 | 134 | 150 | 166 | 182 | 198 | 214 | 230 | 246 |
| 7 | 7 | 23 | 39 | 55 | 71 | 87 | 103 | 119 | 135 | 151 | 167 | 183 | 199 | 215 | 231 | 247 |
| 8 | 8 | 24 | 40 | 56 | 72 | 88 | 104 | 120 | 136 | 152 | 168 | 184 | 200 | 216 | 232 | 248 |
| 9 | 9 | 25 | 41 | 57 | 73 | 89 | 105 | 121 | 137 | 153 | 269 | 185 | 201 | 217 | 233 | 249 |
| A | 10 | 26 | 42 | 58 | 74 | 90 | 106 | 122 | 138 | 154 | 170 | 186 | 202 | 218 | 234 | 250 |
| B | 11 | 27 | 43 | 59 | 75 | 91 | 107 | 123 | 139 | 155 | 171 | 187 | 203 | 219 | 235 | 251 |
| C | 12 | 28 | 44 | 60 | 76 | 92 | 108 | 124 | 140 | 156 | 172 | 188 | 204 | 220 | 236 | 252 |
| D | 13 | 29 | 45 | 61 | 77 | 93 | 109 | 125 | 141 | 157 | 173 | 189 | 205 | 221 | 237 | 253 |
| E | 14 | 30 | 46 | 62 | 78 | 94 | 110 | 126 | 142 | 158 | 174 | 190 | 206 | 222 | 238 | 254 |
| F | 15 | 31 | 47 | 63 | 79 | 95 | 111 | 127 | 143 | 159 | 175 | 191 | 207 | 223 | 239 | 255 |

## Appendix G Barcode Quick Reference

## 1. Introduction

The barcode print facility is available in all three emulations.

## 2. Programming

There are three escape sequences to print barcodes

- The first sequence is to define the Barcode Header. The type of barcode as well as all parameters are selected by a header. The header does not affect any parameters outside the barcode application and remains valid until another header is transmitted or the printer is turned off. This can be done at any time but before barcode printing.

The header has the following format:

$$
\text { ESC }\left[; P_{2} ; P_{3} ; P_{4} ; P_{5} ; P_{6} ; P_{7}-\mathbf{z} \quad \text { Note: }-=\right.\text { Space }
$$

- In step two, the ESC-sequence "Set Mode Barcode (SMBC)" starts the barcode printing.

$$
\text { ESC [ ? } 0 \mathrm{~h}
$$

- Finally, the ESC-sequence "Reset Mode Barcode (RMBC)" will stop printing. ESC [ ? 0 /

Note: Between SMBC and RMBC are only printable characters tolerated (no CR or LF).
2.1 Barcode Header

| Format | Function/Parameter | Hex Code |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BH | Barcode Header | $1 \mathrm{~B} 5 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{3B} \mathrm{P}_{2} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{3} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{4}$ |
|  | $\mathrm{P}_{2}=$ Barcode type; | $3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{5} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{6} 3 \mathrm{~B} \mathrm{P}_{7} 20$ 7A |
|  | $\mathrm{P}_{3}=$ Height of barcode; |  |
|  | $\mathrm{P}_{4}=$ Width of thin bars; |  |
|  | $\mathrm{P}_{5}=$ Width of thin gaps; | $\mathrm{P}_{6}=$ Ratio width to height; |
|  | $\mathrm{P}_{7}=$ Uni/Bidirectional printing |  |
| SMBC | Start of Barcode | 1B 5B 3F 30 68 |
| RMBC | Stop Barcode | 1B 5B 3F 30 6C |

## Barcode Header Parameters

## $P_{2} \quad$ Barcode type

default = 101 (Code 39 horizontal)

| Type | horizontal | horizontal + <br> human <br> readable text | vertical | vertical + <br> human <br> readable text |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code 39 | 101 | 201 | 301 | 401 |
| 2 of 5 industrial | 102 | 202 | 302 | 402 |
| 2 or 5 interleaved | 103 | 203 | 303 | 403 |
| Codabar (Monarch) | 104 | 204 | 304 | 404 |
| EAN 8 | 105 | 205 | not applicable | not applicable |
| EAN 13 | 106 | 206 | not applicable | not applicable |
| Code 93 | 107 | 207 | 307 | 407 |
| MSI Mod 10/10 | 108 | 208 | 308 | 408 |
| UPC-E | 109 | 209 | not applicable | not applicable |
| UPC-A | 110 | 210 | not applicable | not applicable |
| Code 128 (EAN 128) | 111 | 211 | 311 | 411 |
| Postnet | 112 | not applicable | not applicable | not applicable |
| KIX Code | 113 | not applicable | not applicable | not applicable |

## $P_{3} \quad$ Height of barcode

$$
\text { default: }{ }^{3 / 12 " ~}-0.64 \mathrm{~cm}
$$

All characters in a line are automatically repeated according to the selected barcode height. This is also true for plain text!

- $P_{3} * 1 / 11_{12}$
- possible values from:

0 to $40\left(30_{H}\right.$ to $\left.34_{H} 30_{H}\right)$ or $\left(48_{\text {D }}\right.$ to $\left.52_{D} 48_{\text {D }}\right)$ for vertical barcodes
0 to $99\left(30_{\mathrm{H}}\right.$ to $\left.39_{\mathrm{H}} 39_{\mathrm{H}}\right)$ or ( $48_{\mathrm{D}}$ to $57_{\mathrm{D}} 57_{\mathrm{D}}$ ) for horizontal barcodes

| Barcode | Height in \% of <br> barcode length | minimum height <br> in mm |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Code 39 | 25 | $20\left(0.8^{\prime \prime}\right)$ |
| Codabar | 25 | $20\left(0.8^{\prime \prime}\right)$ |
| Code 93 | 15 | $6.25\left(0.25^{\prime \prime}\right)$ |
| Code 128 | 15 | $6.25\left(0.25^{\prime \prime}\right)$ |

$\mathbf{P}_{4}$ Width of the thin bars (default: ${ }^{2 / 144 "}=0.35 \mathrm{~mm}$ )
Note: The width of bars and gaps should be equal. For this, the parameters $\mathbf{P}_{4}$ and $\mathbf{P}_{5}$ should not deviate more than one step.
for horizontal Barcode

| $\mathrm{P}_{4}$ | hex | dec | inch | mm |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 30 | 48 | $2 / 144$ | 0,35 |
| 1 | 31 | 49 | $3 / 144$ | 0,53 |
| 2 | 32 | 50 | $4 / 144$ | 0,70 |
| 3 | 33 | 51 | $5 / 144$ | 0,88 |
| 4 | 34 | 52 | $6 / 144$ | 1,05 |
| 5 | 35 | 53 | $7 / 144$ | 1,23 |
| 6 | 36 | 54 | $8 / 144$ | 1,41 |
| 7 | 37 | 55 | $9 / 144$ | 1,58 |

for vertical Barcode

| $\mathrm{P}_{4}$ | hex | dec | inch | mm |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 30 | 48 | $2 / 180$ | 0,28 |
| 1 | 31 | 49 | $3 / 180$ | 0,42 |
| 2 | 32 | 50 | $4 / 180$ | 0,56 |
| 3 | 33 | 51 | $5 / 180$ | 0,70 |
| 4 | 34 | 52 | $6 / 180$ | 0,85 |
| 5 | 35 | 53 | $7 / 180$ | 0,99 |
| 6 | 36 | 54 | $8 / 180$ | 1,12 |
| 7 | 37 | 55 | $9 / 180$ | 1,27 |

$\mathbf{P}_{5} \quad$ Width of the thin gaps (default: ${ }^{2} /{ }_{144}{ }^{\prime \prime}=0.35 \mathrm{~mm}$ )

The values are the same as in $\mathbf{P}_{4}$
$\mathbf{P}_{6}$ Ratio Width to Thin (default: $\mathbf{0}$ (2 to 1))

| $\mathbf{P}_{6}$ | Code 39 <br> valueof industrial <br> of 5 interleaved <br> Codabar <br> Code 93 <br> MSI mod 10/10 <br> Code 128 | EAN 8 <br> EAN 13 <br> UPC-A <br> UPC-E |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 2.0 to 1 | SC3 |
| 1 | 2.5 to 1 | SC6 |
| 2 | 3.0 to 1 | SC9 |
| 3 | 3.5 to 1 | SC3 |

Note: Code 93, MSI 10/10, Code 128 are fixed 2.0 to 1
Best results for Code 39, 2 of 5 industrial, 2 of 5 interleaved, and Codabar with 2.5 to 1
$\mathbf{P}_{7} \quad$ Uni-directional or bi-directional printing - standard 0 uni-directional
values are: 0 or not programmed means no changes
1 uni-directional printing in LQ
2 bi-directional printing in LQ
3 uni-directional printing in NLQ
4 bi-directional printing in NLQ

Note: A switch from uni-directional to bi-directional printing is only possible if the parameter UNI-DIRECT.CMD is set to YES via operator panel or ESC-sequence.

## Start Position of Barcode Printing

The start position for barcode printing is the current print position.
For both horizontal and vertical printing, the print position after printing barcodes is the same line as the start position next to the barcode printed.

### 2.2 Barcode Programming Examples

Note: All examples are coded in standard uni-directional printing - that means the parameter " $\mathrm{P}_{7}$ " is not used.
In the following examples, ь stands for "Space".
The small square before and after the printed barcode indicates the actual print position.
Between Start Barcode and Stop Barcode are only printable characters tolerated (no CR or LF).

## Barcode Example for Code 39

Barcode Header:

```
ESC [ ; P P ; P
```

ESC [ ; 201 ; 8 ; 1 ; 1 ; 1 ; ц $\mathbf{z}$

Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode:
ESC [ ? 0 h
* C - O - D - E - ч - 3 9 *
ESC [ ? $0 /$


## Barcode Example for 2 of 5 Industrial

Barcode Header:

Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode:

```
ESC [ ; P P ; P
ESC [ ; 202; 8 ; 1 ; 1 ; 1; - z
ESC [ ? O h
: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 ;
ESC [ ? 0 /
```


## Barcode Example for 2 of 5 Interleaved

```
Barcode Header: ESC [ ; P P ; P P ; P
    ESC [ ; 203 ; 8 ; 1 ; 1 ; 1 ; < z
    ESC [ ? 0 h
    : 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 ;
    ESC [ ? 0 /
```



Barcode Example for Codabar (Monarch)

Barcode Header:

Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode:

ESC [ ? 0 h
a $01223456789 t$
ESC [ ? 0 /

## Barcode Example for EAN 8




40123455

Barcode Example for EAN 8 ADD-2


## Barcode Example for EAN 8 ADD-5

```
Barcode Header: ESC [ ; P P ; P P ; P
Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode
ESC [ ; 205 ; 8; ; ; 1 ; - z
ESC [ ? 0 h
4 0 1 2 3 4 5 5 8 6 1 0 4
ESC [ ? 0 /
```



Barcode Example for EAN 13



## Barcode Example for EAN 13 ADD-2



## 

## Barcode Example for EAN 13 ADD-5




## Barcode Example for Code 93

```
Barcode Header: ESC [ ; P P ; P P ; P
Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode
```

ESC [ ; 207
ESC [ ? 0 h
a $\mathrm{C}+\mathrm{O}+\mathrm{D}+\mathrm{E}-93 \mathrm{~W} \mathrm{I} \mathrm{e}$ ESC [ ? 0 /


Barcode Example for MSI Mod 10/10

Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode:

```
Barcode Header
ESC [ ; \(\mathrm{P}_{2}\); \(\mathrm{P}_{3} ; \mathrm{P}_{4} ; \mathrm{P}_{5} ; \mathrm{P}_{6}\); \(\mathrm{P}_{7}\) - \(\mathbf{z}\)
``` ESC [ ; 208; 8; 1 ; 1; ; - z ESC [ ? 0 h
: 123456741 ;
ESC [ ? 0 /


\section*{Barcode Example for UPC-E}
```

Barcode Header: ESC [ ; P}\mp@subsup{\mathbf{P}}{2}{\prime};\mp@subsup{\mathbf{P}}{3}{};\mp@subsup{\mathbf{P}}{4}{};\mp@subsup{\mathbf{P}}{5}{\prime};\mp@subsup{\mathbf{P}}{6}{};\mp@subsup{\mathbf{P}}{7}{
Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode:

```
```

ESC [ ; 209 ; 8; ; ; 1 ; - z

```
ESC [ ; 209 ; 8; ; ; 1 ; - z
ESC [ ? 0 h
ESC [ ? 0 h
O 1 2 3 4 5 6 5
O 1 2 3 4 5 6 5
ESC [ ? 0 /
```

ESC [ ? 0 /

```

123456

Barcode Example for UPC-E ADD-2


\section*{}

123456

\section*{Barcode Example for UPC-E ADD-5}
```

Barcode Header:
Start Barcode
Data:
Stop Barcode:

```


```

ESC [ ; 209 ; 8; ; ; 1 ; - z

```
ESC [ ; 209 ; 8; ; ; 1 ; - z
ESC [ ? 0 h
ESC [ ? 0 h
0}1122434546 5 8 6 1 0 4,
0}1122434546 5 8 6 1 0 4,
ESC [ ? 0/
```

ESC [ ? 0/

```


123456

Barcode Example for UPC-A



Barcode Example for UPC-A ADD-2




\section*{Barcode Example for Code 128}
```

Start Barcode
Data:
Stop Barcode:

```

\section*{Barcode Example for UPC-A ADD-5}

Barcode Header:

Start Barcode:
Data:
Stop Barcode:

ESC [ ; \(P_{2} ; P_{3} ; P_{4} ; P_{5} ; P_{6} ; P_{7}\) - \(z\) ESC [ ; 210; 8; ; 1 ; - z ESC [ ? 0 h
\(\begin{array}{lllllllllllllllll}0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 0 & 5 & 8 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 4\end{array}\) ESC [ ? 0 /

Barcode Example for Code 128 using FNC1 = Coding ] C 1



00340123451234567895

\section*{Barcode Example for POSTNET}


Mark Pollan
101 main St
Anytown US 12345-6789

\section*{Barcode Example for KIX - PTT, Post Nederland}


\section*{Programming two Barcodes symbols on the same line}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline Barcode Header: &  \\
\hline Start Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 h \\
\hline Data: & * C-O-D-E - - 3 9 * \\
\hline Stop Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 / \\
\hline Blank zone & - - - \\
\hline Start Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 h \\
\hline Data: &  \\
\hline Stop Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 / \\
\hline
\end{tabular}



\section*{Programming two Barcodes symbols separated by CR and LF}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline Barcode Header: &  \\
\hline Start Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 h \\
\hline Data: & * C-O~D - E - - 3 9 * \\
\hline Stop Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 / \\
\hline Blank zone: & CR LF LF LF LF LF LF LF \\
\hline Start Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 h \\
\hline Data: &  \\
\hline Stop Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 / \\
\hline
\end{tabular}


\section*{Programming two Barcodes symbols in landscape on the same line}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline Barcode Header: &  \\
\hline Start Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 h \\
\hline Data: & * C-O-D-E- - 3 - * \\
\hline Stop Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 / \\
\hline Blank zone: & - - - \\
\hline Start Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 h \\
\hline Data: & * C-O-D-E- - 3 - * \\
\hline Stop Barcode: & ESC [ ? 0 / \\
\hline
\end{tabular}


\section*{Programming two Barcodes symbols in landscape separated by CR / LF}


\section*{Appendix H Miscellaneous}

\section*{Part Numbers \\ MTX 1345 Printers, Interfaces, Options, Consumables}

1345 Dot Matrix Printer - 120v
1345 Dot Matrix Printer - 230v
Interface, Centronics Parallel \& RS-232-C Serial - 1345

Interface, IBM COAX with Parallel \& Serial - 1345

Interface, IBM TWINAX with Parallel \& Serial - 1345
Interface, IBM Twinax IPDS with Parallel - 1345
Interface, ETHERNET 10 Base T/2 with Serial - 1345

Interface, Token Ring for UTP with Serial - 1345
Interface, Token Ring for STP with Serial - 1345
Interface, IGP 10/20/40 emulation with Par. \& Ser. - 1345

Interface, Digital ANSI emulation with Par. \& Ser. - 1345

Interface, Digital ANSI with ETHERNET \& Serial - 1345

903341-001
903351-001
970436-001

970436-002
970436-003
970436-004

970436-005

970436-006
970436-007
970436-008

970470-001

970470-002
\begin{tabular}{lll} 
& Motor, Color Option & \(970437-001\) \\
& Automatic Cut Sheet Feeder & \(970437-002\) \\
& Automatic Envelope Feeder & \(970437-003\) \\
\hline \(903341-001\) & Manual Feed Platform Extension & \(970437-004\) \\
\(903351-001\) & Printer Stand - 1345 & \(970437-005\) \\
\(970436-001\) & Ribbon, Black (16 million Draft Character Life) & \(970439-004\) \\
\(970436-002\) & Print Head & \(970439-006\) \\
\(970436-003\) & Piaten Assembly - 1345 Color (4 million Char. Life each band) & \(970471-006\) \\
\(970436-004\) & & \(970471-007\) \\
\(970436-005\) & & \(970471-009\) \\
\hline \(970436-006\) & & \\
\hline \(970436-007\) & & \\
\(970436-008\) & & \\
\(970470-001\) & & \\
\(970470-002\) & & \\
\hline 9
\end{tabular}

\section*{Information for the System Manager}

\section*{Reset off Menu Access}

To reactivate the menu access function, perform the following steps:
- Switch off the printer. Press the MENU and START/STOP keys simultaneously. While holding down the two keys, switch on the printer. When the message MENU ACCESS is displayed, release the keys. Now you are able to change the menu access function. If the new setting is supposed to be permanent, don't forget the SAVE function.```


[^0]:    * depending on the selected font

[^1]:    ${ }^{1)}$ Cables with bridges at printer side (4 to 5 ) for older PMs (lower than PM-40A4) can also be used!

[^2]:    $N V=$ National Version

[^3]:    *) only PRINTER TYPE 1

[^4]:    *) only PRINTER TYPE 1
    **) only PRINTER TYPE 1 and PRINTER TYPE 2
    ${ }^{* * * *) ~ o n l y ~ P R I N T E R ~ T Y P E ~} 2$ and PRINTER TYPE 3
    ***) only PRINTER TYPE 1 and PRINTER TYPE 3
    $* * *)$ only PRINTER TYPE 1 and
    $* * * * *) ~ o n l y ~ P R I N T E R ~ T Y P E ~$
    3

[^5]:    **) only PRINTER TYPE 1 and PRINTER TYPE 2
    *) only PRINTER TYPE 1
    ****) only PRINTER TYPE 2 and PRINTER TYPE 3

[^6]:    **) only PRINTER TYPE 1 and PRINTER TYPE 2
    *) only PRINTER TYPE 1
    ***) only PRINTER TYPE 2 and PRINTER TYPE 3

[^7]:    *) only PRINTER TYPE 1

[^8]:    *) only PRINTER TYPE 1
    **) only PRINTER TYPE 1 and PRINTER TYPE 2
    ***) only PRINTER TYPE 2 and PRINTER TYPE 3

[^9]:    *) only PRINTER TYPE 1

